

CONNECT

الفصل الدراسي الأول

الصف الرابع الابتدائي

By a group of supervisors



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلي



دليل ولي الأمر

PARENTS' GUIDE

4th
Primary
2023
FIRST TERM

GET READY!

استعد لمنهجك



1. Words

١. أنواع الكلمات

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ في هذا الجزء على بعض منها.

1 noun الإسم



goat



bag



boy



Salma

2 Verb الفعل



eat



read



play



run

3 adjective الصفة



a small ant



a big camel

4 preposition حرف جر



in the morning

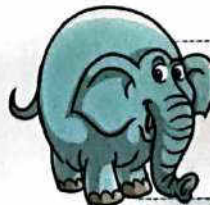


on the table

5 pronoun ضمير



Adam is tall. He isn't short.



The elephant is big. It isn't small.

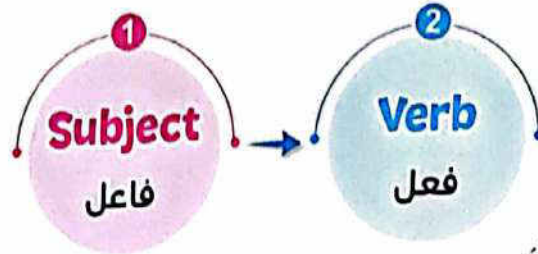
• Help your child identify how to make a sentence.

• ساعد طفلك ان يعرف كيف يكون جملة.

• معرفة التلميذ لنوع الكلمة يساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.

2. Sentence الجملۃ

1 Subject الفاعل



Omar الفاعل

→ Omar plays tennis.
He plays tennis.

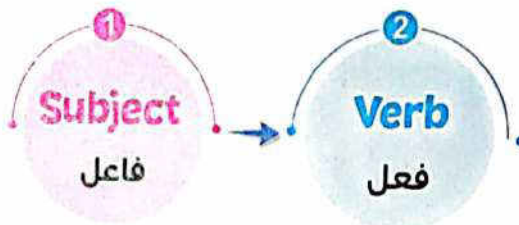
الفاعل He
وهو ضمير فاعل
محل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون (اسم) أو يكون ضمير من (ضمائر الفاعل) التالية:

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I أنا	He هو	She هي	It هو/ هي (غير عاقل)	You أنت / أنتم	They هم	We نحن
----------	----------	-----------	----------------------------	-------------------	------------	-----------

2 Verb الفعل



drink الفعل

I drink water.
He eats fish.

قد يضاف للفعل إضافات
مثل (s) حسب الفاعل
الذي يسبقه في زمن
المضارع البسيط

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the parts of a sentence.
- Help your child identify the verb.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على أجزاء الجملۃ.
نبدأ الجملۃ البسيطة في اللغة الانجليزية بـ (فاعل) ويأتي بعده (فعل) ثم باقي الجملۃ. الفاعل هو من يقوم بعمل الفعل ويكون في بداية الجملۃ.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الفعل.

الفعل هو الحدث الذي يقوم به الفاعل.



How to arrange sentences

١ عند وجود (full stop) نقطة (.) فى نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

1. Statement :

١. جملة خبرية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية
باقى الجملة	تبدأ الجملة الخبرية بـ (فاعل) والفاعل يكون :
فعل	ضمير : I / He / She / It / You / They / We
We live in Egypt.	
Heba cooks well.	اسم : Noha - Wael - Children - The apple - Monkeys ...

2. Imperative sentence :

٢. جملة أمرية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية
باقى الجملة	أمر مثبت : فى هذه الحالة نبدأ بـ (مصدر الفعل inf.)
Study	English with us and have fun.
مصدر الفعل inf.	أمر منفي : فى هذه الحالة نبدأ بـ (Don't + inf. مصدر الفعل)
Don't	Don't
shout	in the classroom.

٢ عند وجود (question mark) علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية الجملة يكون نوع الجملة :

3. Interrogative sentence :

٣. جملة استفهامية :

ترتيب الكلمات	البداية
فعل أساسى	١- السؤال بأداة استفهام :
فاعل	كلمة استفهام
فعل مساعد	How - What - Where -
Where	Who - When - Which ...
did	
you	
go	
yesterday ?	
فعل أساسى	٢- السؤال بمعنى "هل...؟"
فاعل	Do - Does - Did - Is - Are -
فعل مساعد أو ناقص	Was - Were ...
Did	
you	
watch	
the film ?	

punctuation marks

- 1 Capital letters (A, B, C)** - تستخدم في بداية الجملة.
- تستخدم مع أسماء الأشخاص والجنسيات وأسماء الدول.

I like muffins.

I'm from France.

- 2 Period (.)** - تستخدم في نهاية الجملة.

I'm French.

- 3 Question Mark (?)** - تستخدم في نهاية السؤال.



Where are you from ?

- 4 Exclamation Mark (!)** - تستخدم عند التعبير عن شعور قوي.



She's very happy !

- 5 Comma (,)** - تستخدم (,) عند كتابة قائمة (مجموعة) من الأشياء.

I like chocolate , ice cream , pizza and cola.

Notes for parents

- Help your child know how to use capital letters in a sentence and punctuation marks.

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يستخدم الحروف الكبيرة في الجملة وعلامات الترقيم.

Contents



تابع معنا

للسادة المعلمين وأولياء الأمور

I discover myself

Unit 1 : I feel good 21

Unit 2 : Desert animals 80

Unit 3 : Why are plants green ? 128

Review 1 183

Non-Fiction Reader

Where does chocolate come from ? 186



Theme 1

Myself and others

Unit 4 : Where do you live ? 189

Unit 5 : Where do you work ? 235

Unit 6 : What do you do ? 283

Review 2 334

Fiction Reader

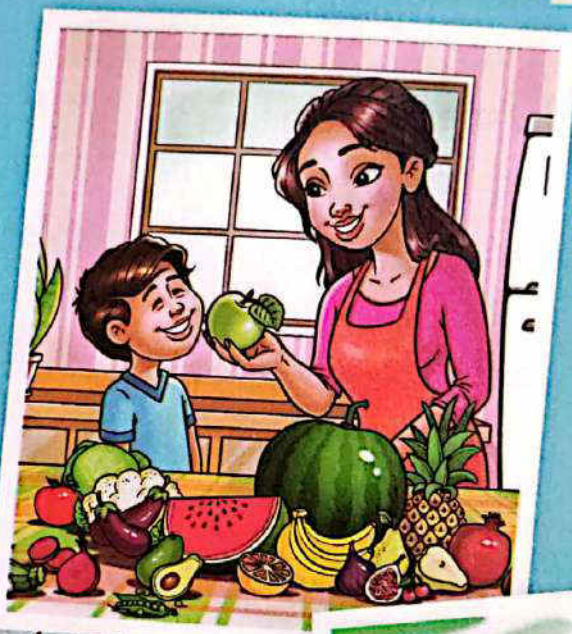
In the Taxi with Uncle Sami 337



Theme 2

Theme 1

I discover myself



UNIT 1

I feel good

أشعر أنني بحالة جيدة



Skills . في نهاية الوحدة.
قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.
• Test your skills . في نهاية الوحدة.
• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

لإتقان
الوحدة

Aims of unit one :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research and write about foods and how to keep healthy.
- استمع، اقرأ، ابحث واكتب عن الأطعمة وكيف تبقى صحيًا.
- practice making sentences with (and) or (but).
- اتركب على صياغة جمل باستخدام (and) أو (but).
- talk about a place in Egypt.
- اتركب عن مكان في مصر.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الأولى :

في هذه الوحدة سوف

- read and listen to a short story.
- اقرأ واستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- distinguish long and short vowels.
- اميز بين الأصوات المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة.
- write instructions.
- اكتب تعليمات.
- research and make a presentation.
- ابحث واقدم عرض.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

foods and drinks اطعمة ومشروبات

watermelon	بطيخة	bananas	موز
sugarcane	قصب السكر	chicken	دجاج
rice	أرز	grapes	عنب
potatoes	بطاطس	mangoes	مانجو
onions	بصل	milk	لبن
tomatoes	طماطم	vegetables	خضروات

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

Egyptian food	طعام مصرى	delicious	لذيذ
farmer	فلاح	ready	جاهز
country	دولة	special	خاص - مميز

Meals الوجبات

breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
lunch	وجبة الغداء
dinner	وجبة العشاء



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• Note : The verb "raise" means to keep and feed animals like chicken to get eggs and meat.

فعل "يربى" يعنى أن ترعى وتطعم الحيوانات مثل الدجاج لتحصل على البيض واللحم.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

raise	يربى
produce	ينتج
look	ينظر

Past

raised
produced
looked

Irregular

Present

make	يصنع / يعد
feed	يطعم
get	يحصل على
build	يبني
grow	يزرع - ينمو
keep	يحافظ / يربى

Past

made
fed
got
built
grew
kept

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- made some special food for أعد بعض الطعام المميز ل.....
- look delicious يبدو لذيذاً
- grow rice يزرع أرزاً
- Yum ! لذيذ !
- raise chickens يربى دجاج
- Let's eat. هيا بنا نأكل.
- That's right. هذا صحيح.
- grow healthier ينمو أكثر صحة
- think about يفكر فى



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Look and write the words. انظر واكتب الكلمات.

1.



2.



3.



4.



2 Look, unscramble and write.

انظر، أعد ترتيب الحروف واكتب.

1.



e r i c

2.



o t o m a t

3.



n s n o i o

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة.

2. Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويعيد ترتيب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبها بشكل صحيح.

Listening and Reading

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Maged and his Mom are talking about Egyptian food. ماجد و والدته يتحدثان عن الطعام المصري.



Lunch is ready. I made some special food for us.

الغداء جاهز. لقد أعددت بعض من الطعام الخاص / المميز لنا.



Mom, it looks delicious !

إنه يبدو لذيذاً يا أمي!



Which food comes from our country, do you think ?

في اعتقادك ، أي طعام يأتي من بلدنا ؟



I think we grow rice in Egypt. أعتقد أننا نزرع الأرز في مصر.



Yes, that's right. What else ? نعم، هذا صحيح. ماذا أيضاً ؟



Hmmm, I think we raise chickens in Egypt.

هممم، أعتقد أننا نربي دجاج في مصر.



Yes, and tomatoes and onions.

Egyptian farmers produce many things you see on this table.

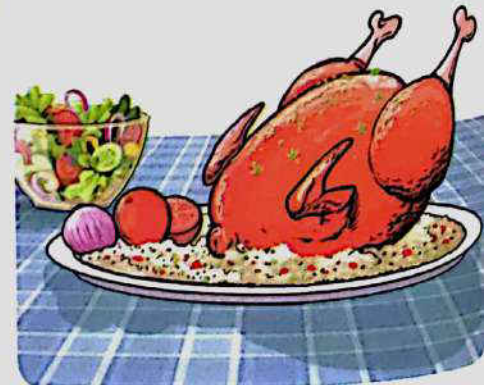
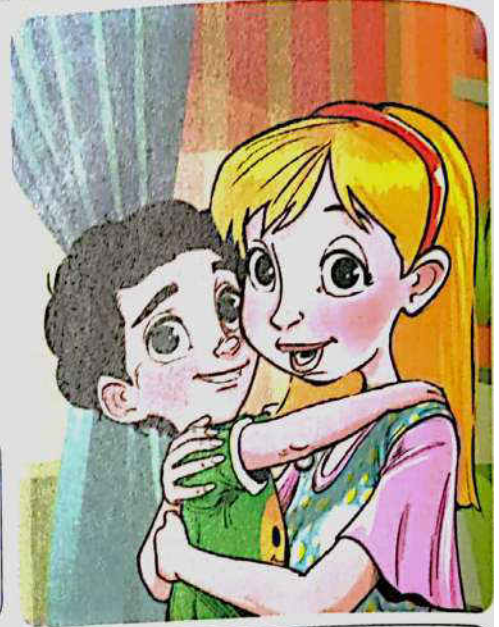
Let's eat !

نعم، والطماطم والبصل. ينتج المزارعون المصريون الكثير من الأشياء التي تراها على هذه المائدة. هيا بنا نأكل!



Yum !

لذيذ !



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

Language

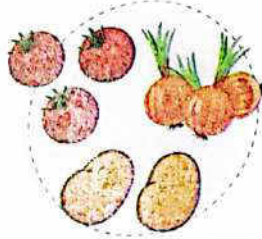
1

Talking about food.

التحدث عن الطعام.

What foods do we produce in Egypt ?

ما الأطعمة التي ننتجها في مصر ؟



We produce vegetables like onions, potatoes and tomatoes.

نحن ننتج الخضروات مثل البصل، البطاطس والطماطم.



2

Plural nouns

الأسماء الجمع

Singular المفرد

Plural الجمع



one onion

two onions



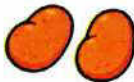
one banana

two bananas



one potato

two potatoes



one tomato

two tomatoes



• Help your child to identify that most singular nouns change into plural by adding "s".

• ساعد طفلك في التعرف على أن معظم الأسماء المفردة يتم جمعها بإضافة "s" إليها.

• Help your child to identify that we add (es) to singular nouns ending with (o - x - s - ch - sh - ss)

• ساعد طفلك في التعرف على الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (o - x - s - ch - sh - ss) تجمع بإضافة "es".

Dictation



إتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell

watermelon بطيخة

bananas موز

chicken دجاج

grapes عنب

mangoes مانجو

sugarcane قصب السكر

rice أرز

potatoes بطاطس

onions بصل

milk لبن

tomatoes طماطم

breakfast وجبة الإفطار

vegetables خضروات

Complete

w _ t _ rme _ _ n

b _ n _ n _ s

chi _ _ e _

g _ _ p _ s

m _ ng _ _ s

s _ garc _ _ e

r _ c _

p _ tat _ _ _

o _ i _ ns

m _ lk

t _ ma _ oes

br _ _ kf _ s _

v _ g _ ta _ les

Write

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

General Exercises

on Lesson 1

لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. We grow rice in Egypt.
2. Farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat.
3. Our food isn't delicious.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- A**
1. Egyptian farmers
 2. Raise chickens is
 3. What food
 4. Which food comes from
 5. A mango

- B**
- ☐ a. to keep and feed them to get eggs and meat.
 - ☐ b. is a fruit.
 - ☐ c. to build houses for chickens.
 - ☐ d. grow rice, onions and tomatoes.
 - ☐ e. our country ?
 - ☐ f. do we produce in Egypt ?

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

watermelons – raise – grow – sugarcane

Fruits grow in different times of the year. We (1).....
different kinds in Egypt. Mangoes and (2)..... grow in
summer. We get sugar from (3)..... . Fruits are delicious.

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Farmers are very important for us. They produce a lot of food for us to eat. They grow rice in Egypt. They also grow vegetables like tomatoes and onions. They grow fruits like watermelons and bananas. We can raise chicken to get eggs and meat.

A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Farmers grow fruit only.
2. Watermelons and bananas are fruits.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why are farmers very important ?

.....

4. Why do we raise chicken ?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

عد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. farmers – do – What – grow ?

.....

2. farmers – Egyptian – produce – things – many.

.....

3. food – Mum's – delicious – looks.

.....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.

طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

طلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل/أسئلة صحيحة.

6 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. is very delicious and sweet.
a. Rice b. Water c. Sugarcane
2. food comes from our country ? - Rice.
a. Why b. When c. Which
3. grow vegetables for us to eat.
a. Engineers b. Farmers c. Doctors
4. We produce vegetables like and potatoes.
a. onions b. bananas c. watermelon
5. Chickens give us
a. eggs b. milk c. grass

7 Write a paragraph of **FOUR (4)** sentences using the following guiding elements.

ments.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربع جمل مستخدمًا العناصر المرشدة.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Food in Egypt

Guiding words :

- Guiding words :
 • grow • raise • produce • farmers



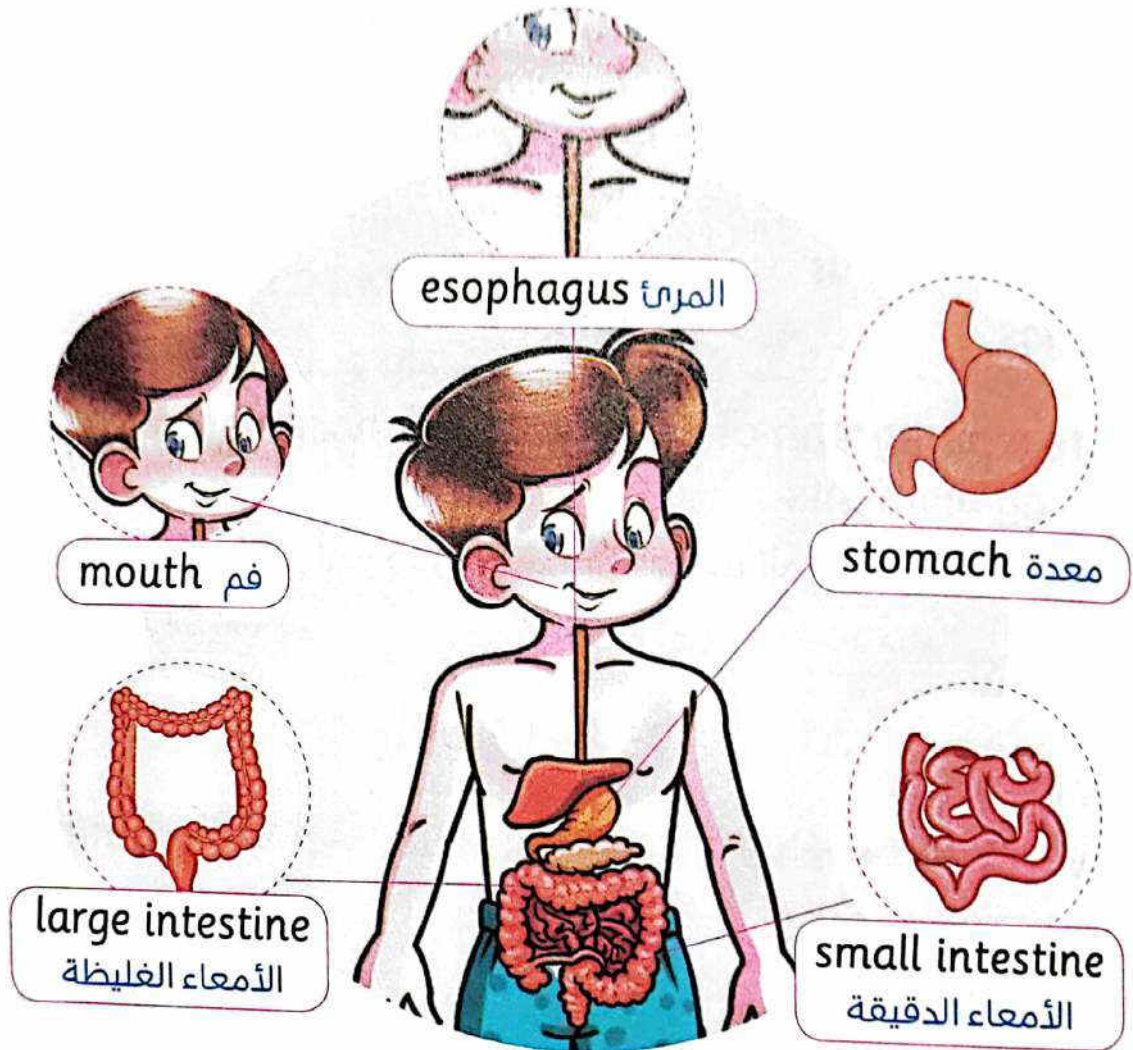
8 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

that s right



Key Vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat. انظر، استمع وردد.



The Digestive System الجهاز الهضمي

Extra vocabulary

body	جسم	digestion	عملية الهضم
salt	ملح	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
energy	طاقة	gastric juice	عصارة المعدة
healthy	صحي	waste	مخلفات - فضلات

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردد.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

digest	يهضم
complete	يكمل
remove	يزيل / يطرد
chew	يمضغ
change	يغير
mix	يخلط / يمزج

Past

digested
completed
removed
chewed
changed
mixed

Irregular

Present

put	يضع
go	يذهب
eat	يأكل
take	يأخذ

Past

put
went
ate
took

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- go from to = move from to
- remove waste
- chew food with
- change into
- a simpler form
- get energy
- mix with
- go down
- arrive in

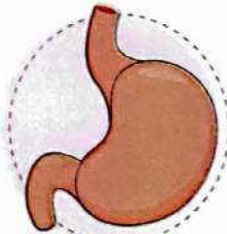
- ينتقل من إلى
- يطرد الفضلات
- يمضغ الطعام باستخدام
- يتحول / يتغير إلى
- شكل أبسط
- يحصل على طاقة
- يختلط بـ
- ينزل إلى
- يصل إلى



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look and write the missing letters. انظر واكتب الحروف الناقصة.

1.



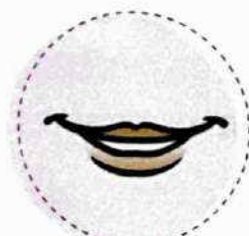
st - ma - -

2.



e - - pha - - s

3.



m - - th

• Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters in each word.

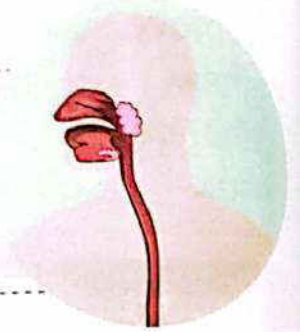
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكمل الحروف الناقصة في كل كلمة.

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

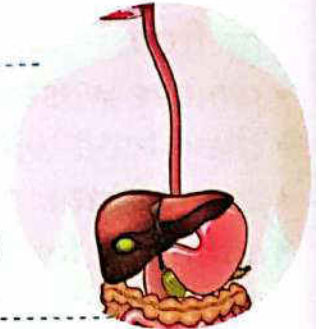
What happens in our body when we eat food ?

ماذا يحدث فى جسدنا عندما نأكل الطعام ؟

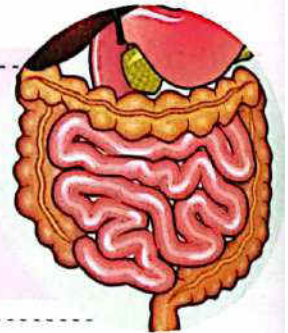
- 1 The esophagus goes from the mouth to the stomach.
يمتد المريء من الفم إلى المعدة.



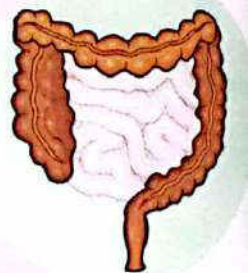
- 2 When the food moves from the esophagus to the stomach, the gastric juice digests it.
عندما ينتقل الطعام من المريء إلى المعدة، العصارة الهضمية تهضمه.



- 3 Food moves from the stomach to the small intestine to complete the digestion.
ينتقل الطعام من المعدة إلى الأمعاء الدقيقة ليكمل عملية الهضم.



- 4 The large intestine is around the small intestine. It takes water and salt from food for the body. It removes waste.
تلتف الأمعاء الغليظة حول الأمعاء الدقيقة. تمتص الماء والملح من الطعام للجسم وتزيل الفضلات.



Notes for parents

- Help your child read the sentences and learn about the digestion.

اعد طفلك ان يقرأ الجمل ويتعلم عن عملية الهضم.

The human digestive system

الجهاز الهضمي للإنسان

★ Read and learn.

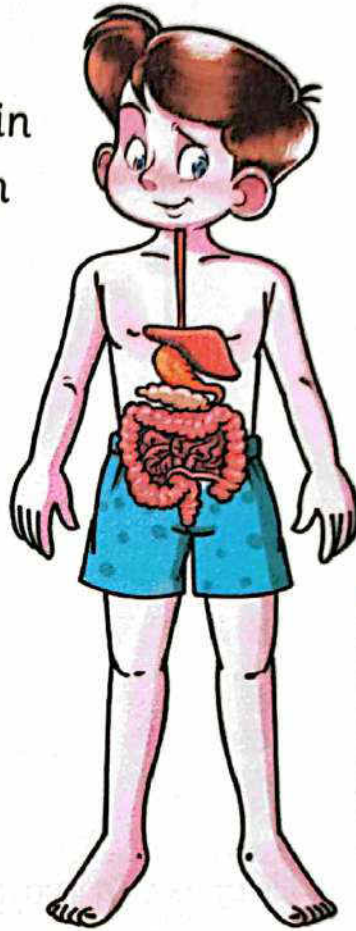
When we eat ...

We use our **digestive system**⁽¹⁾ to digest what we eat. We put food in our mouths. We **chew**⁽²⁾ food with our teeth.

Then the food goes down the **esophagus**⁽³⁾. It arrives in the stomach.

In the stomach, the food mixes with the **gastric juice**⁽⁴⁾.

The gastric juice changes the food into a simpler form to get energy and **nutrients**⁽⁵⁾. We need the **energy**⁽⁶⁾ and nutrients in our body.



Pop Quiz

أدرب على ٢٢ من
قواطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Check Vocabulary

- (1) الجهاز الهضمي
- (2) يمضغ
- (3) مریء
- (4) عُصرة المعدة
- (5) عناصر غذائية
- (6) طاقة

Answer the following questions.

Learn

1. What does the gastric juice do ?

- It changes the food into a simpler form to get energy and nutrients.

Practise

2. How do we chew food ?

3. Why does the gastric juice change the food into a simpler form ?

• Help your child read the text and learn about digestive system.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن الجهاز الهضمي.

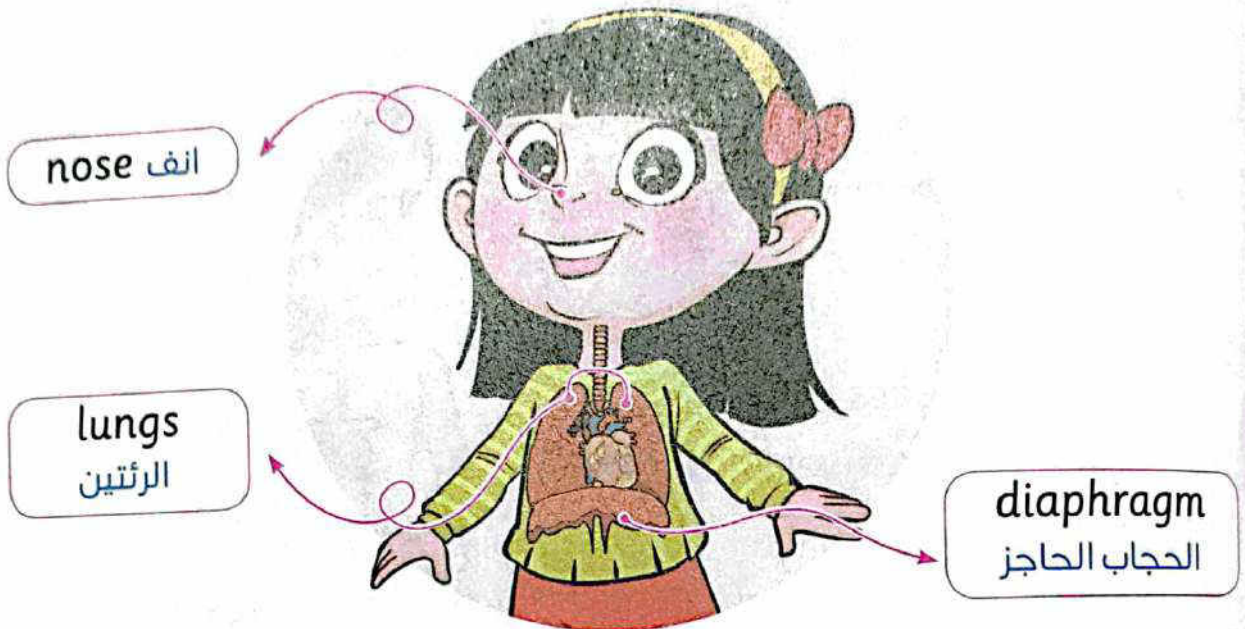
- عندما نأكل ... نحن نستخدم الجهاز الهضمي لهضم ما نأكله. نضع الطعام في أفواهنا. نمضغ الطعام بأسناننا. ثم ينزل الطعام إلى المريء ويصل إلى المعدة. في المعدة، يختلط الطعام بعصرة المعدة. تقوم عصارة المعدة بتحويل الطعام إلى شكل أبسط للحصول على الطاقة والعناصر الغذائية. نحن بحاجة إلى الطاقة والعناصر الغذائية في أجسامنا.



Key Vocabulary



Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



Respiratory System الجهاز التنفسي

★ Read and identify these descriptions. اقرأ وتعرف.

Word الكلمة	Description الوصف
breathe يتنفس	To take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide. أن تستنشق الأكسجين وتخرج ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
nose الأنف	This is in the center of the face. تقع في منتصف الوجه.
lungs الرئتين	We have two of these. They are inside the body. لدينا رئتين. انهما بداخل الجسم.
diaphragm الحجاب الحاجز	This is a muscle under the lungs. هو عضلة أسفل الرئتين.
pump يضخ	To move quickly from one place to another. أن ينتقل بسرعة من مكان إلى مكان آخر.

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture and read the words.
- Help your child read each word and identify the description.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ الكلمات.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ كل كلمة ويتعرف على الوصف الخاص بها.

• Note : In our bodies, the right lung is larger than the left lung.

في أجسادنا، الرئة اليمنى أكبر من الرئة اليسرى.

Extra vocabulary

carbon dioxide	غاز ثان أكسيد الكربون	oxygen	غاز الأكسجين
smoke	دخان	air	هواء
balcony	بالكونية - شرفة	blood	دم

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

use	يستخدم
breathe	يتنفس
pull	يسحب
push	يدفع
stay	يبقى
exercise	يتدرب
move	يتحرك

Past

used
breathed
pulled
pushed
stayed
exercised
moved

Irregular

Present

drink	يشرب
put	يضع
go	يذهب
give	يعطي

Past

drank
put
went
gave

Important expressions and prepositions

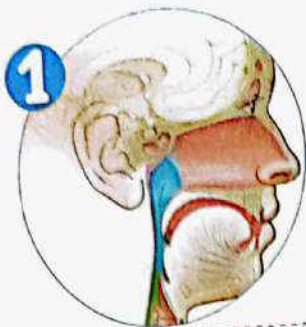
تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- move quickly from
- take in oxygen
- give out carbon dioxide
- in the center of the face
- inside the body
- through nose
- breathe in x breathe out
- go up x go down
- pump blood around the body
- push air out
- pull air into
- stay away from
- drink plenty of water

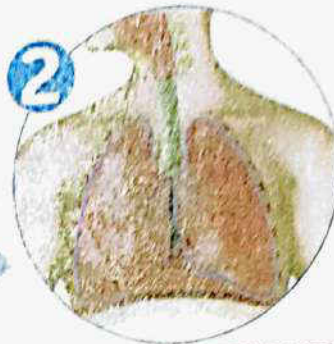
- يتحرك بسرعة من
- يستنشق الأكسجين
- يخرج غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون
- فى منتصف الوجه
- داخل الجسم
- خلال الأنف
- يستنشق x يزفر (يخرج الزفير)
- يرتفع x ينخفض
- يضخ الدم حول الجسم
- يدفع الهواء للخارج
- يسحب الهواء للداخل
- يبقى بعيداً عن
- يشرب الكثير من الماء

★ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

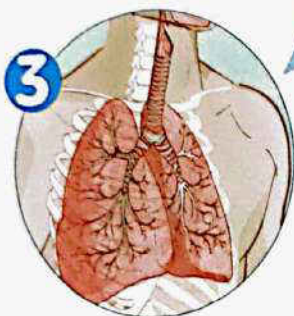
The Respiratory System الجهاز التنفسي



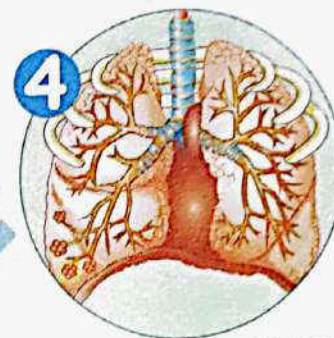
We breathe through our nose.
نتنفس الهواء من خلال أنفنا.



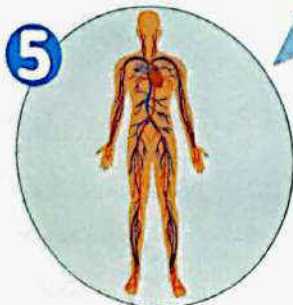
The diaphragm goes down.
ينخفض الحجاب الحاجز.



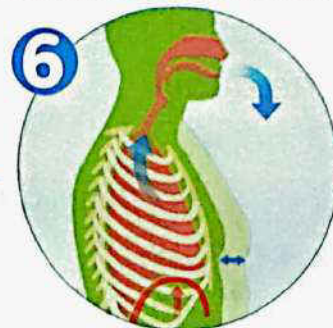
The diaphragm pulls air into our lungs.
يسحب الحجاب الحاجز الهواء إلى داخل رئتيها.



When the air arrives in our lungs, the oxygen goes into our blood.
عندما يصل الهواء إلى الرئتين يدخل الهواء إلى دمنا.



The heart pumps the blood around our body.
يضخ القلب الدم حول جسدنا.



The diaphragm moves up and pushes the air out of our body.
يرتفع الحجاب الحاجز ويدفع الهواء خارج جسدنا.

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the respiratory system.

• ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الجهاز التنفسي.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Our respiratory system

We use our **respiratory system**⁽¹⁾ when we breathe. We need **oxygen**⁽²⁾ in our bodies. We breathe in air through our nose. Our **diaphragm**⁽³⁾ goes down. It pulls air into our lungs.

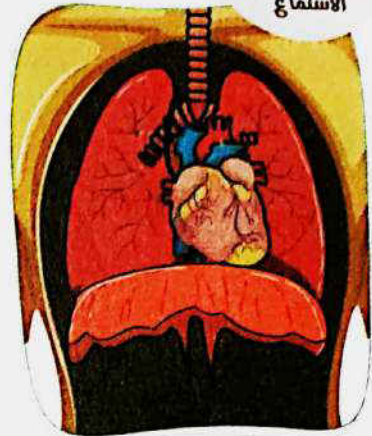
In the **lungs**⁽⁴⁾, the oxygen from the air goes into our blood.

Our **heart**⁽⁵⁾ pumps this blood around our body. The diaphragm goes up. It pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs.

We **breathe out**⁽⁶⁾.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع



Check Vocabulary

- (1) الجهاز التنفسي
- (2) غاز الأكسجين
- (3) الحجاب الحاجز
- (4) رئتين
- (5) قلب
- (6) يطلق زفير

Answer
the following
questions.

- Learn** 1. When do we use our respiratory system ?
- We use it when we breathe.
- Practise** 2. What is the function (وظيفة) of the heart ?

Language

Imperative : صيغة الأمر :

Usage To give orders and instructions.

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء أوامر وتعليمات.

Formation التكوين

Inf. + باقى الجملة
↓
Drink plenty of water.



- Help your child look at the picture and read the text.
- Help your child know how to use imperative to give orders and instructions.
- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.
- ساعد طفلك في معرفة كيفية استخدام صيغة الأمر لإعطاء أوامر وتعليمات.

جهازنا التنفسي : نستخدم جهازنا التنفسي عندما نتنفس. لحاج الأكسجين في أجسادنا. نتنفس الهواء من خلال الأنف. ينخفض الحجاب الحاجز لدينا ويسحب الهواء إلى رئتيها (الشهيق). في الرئتين، يدخل الأكسجين من الهواء إلى دمنا. يضخ قلبنا هذا الدم حول جسمنا. يرتفع الحجاب الحاجز. ويدفع الهواء المحمل بثنائي أكسيد الكربون خارج رئتيها. وبذلك نقوم بالإففير.



Activity

★ Look, read and circle. انظر، اقرأ وضع دائرة.

How can we have a healthy respiratory system ?

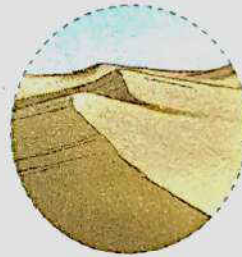
1 Exercise.



2 Drink plenty of water.



3 Put green plants in your balcony.



4 Stay away from smoke.



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look, read and circle the correct picture.

اسأل طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الصورة الصحيحة.

Dictation



لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
stomach المعدة	s _ oma _ _	
esophagus المريء	e _ o _ _ ag _ s	
digestive system الجهاز الهضمي	di _ est _ _ e s _ st _ m	
large intestine الأمعاء الغليظة	l _ rg _ in _ es _ ine	
small intestine الأمعاء الدقيقة	sm _ ll in _ e s _ ine	
lungs الرئتين	l _ n _ s	
respiratory system الجهاز التنفسي	re _ _ irat _ ry s _ _ tem	
diaphragm الحجاب الحاجز	dia _ _ _ agm	
breathe يتنفس	b _ ea _ _ e	
pump يضخ	p _ _ p	
gastric juice عصارة المعدة	ga _ tri _ ju _ _ e	

• Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

General Exercises

on Lesson 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- We use our digestive system when we breathe.
- We breathe in air through our nose.
- We need carbon dioxide in our bodies.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

nutrients - mixes - chew - gastric juice

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat. We put food in our mouths. We (1) food with our teeth. In the stomach, the food (2) with the gastric juice. The (3) changes the food into a simpler form to get energy.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The goes from the mouth to the stomach.
a. diaphragm b. esophagus c. heart d. intestine
- The is a muscle under the lungs.
a. esophagus b. nose c. mouth d. diaphragm
- We use our to digest what we eat.
a. blood b. digestive system
c. respiratory system d. lungs
- plenty of water.
a. Drank b. Drinking c. Drink d. Drinks
- When the air arrives in our lungs, the goes into our blood.
a. water b. carbon dioxide
c. oxygen d. gastric juice

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
- Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

④ Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. balcony – plants – your – in – Put – green.

2. A nose – in – is – the face – of – the center.

3. from – away – smoke – Stay.

⑤ Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We need oxygen in our bodies. We breathe in air through our nose. Our diaphragm goes down and pulls air into our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our blood. Our heart pumps it around our body. The diaphragm goes up and pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs when we breathe out.

A. Read and write True (T) or False (F).

T **F**

1. We need carbon dioxide in our bodies to breathe.

☐ ☐

2. Our diaphragm pulls air into our lungs when we breathe in.

☐ ☐

3. Our heart pumps blood around our body.

☐ ☐

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the oxygen from the air go ?

.....

5. What does the diaphragm do when we breathe out ?

.....

4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جمل صحيحة.

5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة.

اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B). (B) .
6 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. We need oxygen in
 2. "To breathe" is
 3. We chew food with
 4. The esophagus moves food to
 5. We need energy and

- B**
- a. to take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.
 - b. our teeth.
 - c. to pump the blood.
 - d. our bodies.
 - e. nutrients in our body.
 - f. the stomach.

7 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

drink plenty of water

8 Write a paragraph of about FOUR (4) sentences using the following guiding elements :

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ٤ جمل مستخدماً العناصر المرشدة الآتية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The digestive system

Guiding words :

- digest
- chew food
- stomach
- esophagus



Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

7. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

8. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 sentences about the given topic.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).
 - اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.
 - اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن الموضوع المعطى له.



Vocabulary

★ Read and repeat. اقرأ وردد.

Key vocabulary

drink cola	يشرب مياه غازية	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
burger	برجر	play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة
eat candy	يأكل الحلوى	play video games	يلعب ألعاب فيديو

■ **تنويه** Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

wheelchair	كرسي متحرك	awesome	رائع
basketball team	فريق كرة السلة	sometimes	أحياناً
scientist	عالم	interesting	ممتع
banana milkshake	لبن مخفوق بالموز		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

walk يمشى
talk يتحدث

Past

walked
talked

Irregular

Present

hurt يصيب - يؤذى

Past

hurt

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- on the weekend
- make banana milkshake
- wheelchair basketball team
- once a week
- walk home

فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
يعد / يصنع لبن مخفوق بالموز
فريق كرة السلة على الكراسى المتحركة
مرة واحدة فى الأسبوع
يعود للمنزل سيراً على الأقدام

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الكلمات ويرددها.

• Help your child read the words and repeat them.

☆ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Do you think you're **healthy**⁽¹⁾, Judy ?
هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة يا جودي ؟



Check Vocabulary

- (1) صحى
- (2) رياضة
- (3) السير
- (4) حلوى
- (5) بطيخ
- (6) رائع
- (7) لبن مخفوق بالموز



Yes, I do. I do a lot of **sport**⁽²⁾ at school. On the weekend, I walk to my grandma's house with my family. I really like **walking**⁽³⁾ because

I can talk to my mom and dad. We can see the different houses and shops.

I don't eat **candy**⁽⁴⁾, but I like fruit. My favorite fruits are bananas and **watermelon**⁽⁵⁾. My mom makes an **awesome**⁽⁶⁾ **banana milkshake**⁽⁷⁾ !

نعم، أعتقد. أننى أمارس الكثير من الرياضة فى المدرسة. فى العطلة الأسبوعية، أسير إلى منزل جدتى مع عائلتى. أنا حقاً أحب السير لأننى أستطيع التحدث إلى والدتى ووالدى. نحن نستطيع أن نرى المنازل والمحلات المختلفة. لا أتناول الحلوى، ولكنى أحب الفاكهة. فاكهتى المفضلة هى الموز والبطيخ. والدتى تصنع لبن مخفوق بالموز رائع !



Do you think you are healthy, Adam ?

هل تعتقد أنك بصحة جيدة، يا آدم ؟

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



Yes. I'm in a **wheelchair**⁽⁸⁾ **basketball**⁽⁹⁾ **team**⁽¹⁰⁾ at school.

We practice three times every week. I **drink cola**⁽¹¹⁾, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very **busy**⁽¹²⁾. I play basketball and I play **football**⁽¹³⁾ in the park.



Check Vocabulary

(8) كرسي متحرك

(9) كرة السلة

(10) فريق

(11) يشرب مياه غازية

(12) مشغول

(13) كرة القدم

نعم، أنا عضو في فريق كرة السلة على كرسي متحرك في المدرسة. نتدرب ثلاث مرات كل أسبوع. أنا أشرب المياه الغازية (كولا)، لكنني أريد أن أشرب المزيد من الماء. لا ألعب ألعاب الفيديو لأنني مشغول للغاية. ألعب كرة السلة وكرة القدم في الحديقة.



Do you think you are healthy, Dareen ?

هل تعتقدين أنك بصحة جيدة، يا دارين ؟



Yes, I think I'm healthy. My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a **scientist**⁽¹⁴⁾ and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every **weekend**⁽¹⁵⁾. It's very interesting, but it's very hot **sometimes**⁽¹⁶⁾ ! I only drink water because I don't like cola. I love **burgers**⁽¹⁷⁾, but I only eat one a week. My mom makes **yummy**⁽¹⁸⁾ salads.



Check Vocabulary

(14) عالم

(15) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

(16) أحيانًا

(17) برجر

(18) لذيذ

نعم، أعتقد أنني بصحة جيدة. والدتي وأنا نذهب للتمشية في الصحراء مع والدي. أبي عالم ويحب دراسة / ملاحظة الحيوانات والنباتات. نذهب معه دائمًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع للغاية، لكن الطقس حار جدًا في بعض الأحيان ! أنا أشرب الماء فقط لأنني لا أحب المياه الغازية (كولا). أحب البرجر، لكنني أتناول ساندوتش واحدًا فقط في الأسبوع. تصنع والدتي أنواع لذيذة من السلطات.

Language

A conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences together.
أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل ببعض.

1 To add two ideas together

نستخدم (and) عندما نضيف أفكار (نربطها) لبعضها البعض أو أحداث متتالية:

and

9

I eat vegetables

and

I exercise.



2 To show contrast two ideas

نستخدم (but) عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين:

but

لكن

I want to play football

, but

I hurt my leg.



Pop Quiz on language

★ Choose the correct answer to complete each sentence.
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة لتكملة كل جملة.

1. I want to go swimming,
..... it is raining.

a. and

b. but

3. After school, I do my
homework I eat
dinner.

a. and

b. but

5. My dad is Egyptian,
..... my mum is French.

a. and

b. but

2. Fatima loves ice cream
..... chocolate.

a. and

b. but

4. I practice basketball,
..... I walk home
from school every day.

a. and

b. but

6. He speaks English,
he can't speak Chinese.

a. and

b. but

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the different conjunctions.
- Help your child identify the uses of "but" & "and".
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer to complete each sentence.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي أدوات الربط المختلفة .
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف علي استخدامات "and" & "but".
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة لتكملة كل جملة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

burn	حرق	gloves	قفازات
scrape	خدش	nosebleed	نزيف بالأنف
band-aid	لاصق طبي (للجروح)	sprain	يلتوى / إلتواء

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها. Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية). قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

pinching	الضغط	first-aid kit	صندوق الإسعافات الأولية
joints	مفاصل الجسم	a bag of ice	كيس ثلج

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

ask	يطلب
press	يضغط
cough	يكح
sprain	يلتوى

Past

asked
pressed
coughed
sprained

Irregular

Present

hold	يمسك
hit	يضرب
fall	يسقط
redo	يعيد فعل شيء

Past

held
hit
fell
redid

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- Hit her on the back.
- with your hand open
- Be a kind friend.
- fall over
- put on

اضربها على الظهر.
و يدك مفتوحة
كن صديقاً عطوفاً.
يسقط أرضاً
يرتدى

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

• Note : sprain(v) : to twist one of the body joints.

يلتوى : تنثنى إحدى مفاصل الجسم.

☆ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Health problems مشكلات صحية

Your friend has a burn on his/her hand.
صديقك مصاب بحرق في يده / يدها.



Solution (الحل)

Hold the hand under cold water for 10 minutes.

ضع اليد تحت الماء البارد لمدة ١٠ دقائق.



Your cousin cannot breathe. She is coughing.

ابنة عمك / خالك لا تستطيع التنفس. هي تكح.



Solution (الحل)

Hit her on the back with your hand open.

اضربها على الظهر ويدك مفتوحة.



Your brother sprained his foot.

اصيب أخيك بالتواء في القدم.



Solution (الحل)

Press a bag of ice on his foot.

اضغط على قدمه بكييس ثلج.



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and read the sentences.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ الجمل.

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Giving instructions for help. إعطاء التعليمات بغرض المساعدة.

1 Someone falls over and cuts their leg. Be a kind friend.
سقط شخص ما وجرح ساقه ، كن صديقًا لطيفًا.

1. Ask them to sit down.
أطلب منه الجلوس.



2. Put on gloves.
ارتدى قفازات.



3. Wash the scrape with water and soap.
اغسل الخدش بالماء والصابون.



4. Put on a band-aid.
ضع ضمادة طبية.



5. The next day, wash the scrape with soap and water again. Redo the band-aid.

فى اليوم التالى، اغسل الخدش بالصابون والماء مرة أخرى. قم بإعادة وضع الضمادة الطبية.



2 Someone has a nosebleed. Be a kind friend.
شخص أصيب بنزيف بالأنف. كن صديقًا لطيفًا.

1. Ask them to sit down.
اطلب منه الجلوس.

2. Put on gloves.
ضع القفازات.

3. Hold their nose.
اضغط على أنفه.

4. Ask them to breathe through their mouth.
اطلب منه أن يتنفس من الفم.



pinch nose

5. Continue pinching the nose for 5-10 minutes.
استمر بالضغط على الأنف لمدة من ٥ - ١٠ دقائق.

General Exercises

on Lesson 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

1. Reem is healthy.
2. Reem does sports at the club.
3. Reem walks to her grandma's house on Wednesdays.

2 Choose the correct word from a , b or c. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. Put on a when you have a scrape.
 - a. jacket
 - b. water
 - c. band-aid
2. She has a nosebleed so ask her to through her mouth.
 - a. walk
 - b. breathe
 - c. jump
3. A cat is small, the horse is big.
 - a. because
 - b. but
 - c. so
4. My sister her foot so I pressed a bag of ice on her foot.
 - a. walked
 - b. burned
 - c. sprained
5. Nada loves fruits and vegetables. She is
 - a. healthy
 - b. unhealthy
 - c. happy

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. has - My sister - a burn - on - her arm.

2. friend - kind - a - Be.

3. loves - and chocolate - Faten - ice cream.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b or c.
3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box. اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الصندوق.

go - easy - hot - scientist

My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a (1) and he likes looking at animals and plants. The desert is very interesting, but it's very (2) sometimes. We (3) with my dad every weekend.

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Adam. I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink cola, but I want to drink more water. I don't play video games because I'm very busy. I like to play with my friends in the park.

A. Read and write True (T) or False (F).

- Adam practices basketball five times every week.
- Adam is in a wheelchair volleyball team.
- Adam is very busy.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

- What does Adam want to drink more ?
.....
- Where does Adam play with his friends ?
.....

6 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

A

- My cousin sprained
- I want to play football,
- Wash the scrape
- My favorite fruits are

B

- but I hurt my leg.
- with water and soap.
- bananas and watermelons.
- with gastric juice.
- his foot.

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

6. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

tea	شاي	cookies	كعك محلي
honey	عسل	flapjack	فطيرة / كعك محلي (بريطاني) - فطيرة الشوفان
oats	شوفان	apartment	شقة سكنية
ingredients	مكونات - مقادير	butter	زبدة

- تنويه** ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

plate	طبق مسطح	next time	المرّة القادمة
Egyptian	مصري	pan	مقلاة
British	بريطاني	over low heat	على حرارة منخفضة
bake	يخبز	square	مربع
recipe	وصفة الطهي	excited	منفعل - متحمس
dessert	حلوى		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

melt يذوب
 add يضيف
 slice يقطع إلى شرائح
 repaint يعيد الدهان
 reclean يعيد النظافة

Past

melted
 added
 sliced
 repainted
 recleaned

Irregular

Present

feel يشعر
 say يقول

Past

felt
 said

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

- talk together
- say goodbye
- a bit worried
- taste good
- have some tea
- try a little

يتحدثوا مع بعض
يقول وداعًا / إلى اللقاء
قلق قليل
له مذاق جيد
يتناول بعض الشاي
يجرب القليل

- What a great idea !
يا لها من فكرة رائعة !
- slice into small squares
يقطع إلى مربعات صغيرة
- stir well
يقرب جيدًا

★ Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Talia learns to love flapjacks !

Talia and Suzanne are good friends. Talia is Egyptian and Suzanne is British. Their parents are friends, too. They talk together a lot. They are sad when they say goodbye. One day, Talia and her mom go to Suzanne's apartment. Talia is excited, but she is a bit worried. What is British food? Does it taste good ?



Suzanne says, "Please, have some tea, Talia. Would you like a flapjack? My mom and I made them. "Suzanne has a plate in her hands. On the plate there are big, square cookies. Talia looks at the flapjacks.

"Suzanne, I am very happy you made them for me, but what is a flapjack ?" she asks.

Suzanne says, "They are cookies. I make them with oats, butter, and honey. Try a little."

Talia's mom smiles too. Talia tries a flapjack. It's delicious!

"I love it ! she says. "How do you make them ?"

Suzanne says, 'It's very easy. Next time you visit us, we can make them together' ! Talia says, "What a great idea !"

• Help your child listen and read the text.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

تاليا وسوزان صديقتان حميمتان. تاليا مصرية وسوزان بريطانية. والديهم أصدقاء أيضًا. هم يتحدثون معًا كثيرًا. هم يشعرون بالحنن عندما يقولون وداعًا. ذات يوم، ذهبت تاليا وأمي إلى شقة سوزان. تاليا متحمسة لكنها قلقة بعض الشيء. ما هو الطعام البريطاني؟ هل مذاقه جيد؟ تقول سوزان: "من فضلك تناول بعض الشاي يا تاليا. هل تريد فطائر الشوفان؟ فليب جاك؟" لقد صنعتها أنا وأمي. سوزان لديها طبق في يدها. على الطبق هناك كعك محلى كبير الحجم على شكل مربع. تاليا تنظر إلى الفطائر. تسأل تاليا "سوزان أنا سعيدة جدًا لأنك صنعتها. لكن ما هي فطائر الشوفان؟ فليب جاك؟" تقول سوزان: "إنها كعك محلى. أنا أعدها من الشوفان، الزبدة والعسل جرب قليلًا." والدة تاليا تبتسم أيضًا. تجرب تاليا فطائر الشوفان "الفليب جاك" إنها لذيذة! تقول تاليا "أنا أحبها". كيف تعدها؟ تقول سوزان: "الأمور سهل للغاية. المرة القادمة التي تقوم فيها بزيارتنا نستطيع صنعها معًا" تقول تاليا: "يا لها من فكرة رائعة!"

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Suzanne's recipe for flapjacks

This is how Suzanne and her mom make flapjacks :

هذه الطريقة التي تقوم بها سوزان وأمها بإعداد فطائر الشوفان.

- Melt the butter, sugar, and honey in a large pan over low heat.
اجعل الزبدة والسكر والعسل تذوب في مقلاة كبيرة على نار هادئة.

- Add oats and salt and then stir well.

أضف الشوفان والملح ثم قلب جيداً.

- Bake for 20 minutes.

توضع في الفرن لمدة عشرين دقيقة.

- When the flapjacks are cold, slice into small squares.

عندما تبرد الفطائر، قم بتقطيعها إلى مربعات صغيرة.



Ingredients

220g butter

150g brown sugar

150g honey

440g oats

10g salt

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about flapjacks recipe and identify.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن وصفة طهي فطائر الشوفان ويتعرف.

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Short vowels

- The letter (a) makes the sound / æ /



bag حقيبة

- The letter (i) makes the sound / ɪ /



mix يخلط

- The letter (o) makes the sound / ɒ /



mom أم

Long vowels

- The letters (a - e) make the sound / eɪ /



cake كيك

- The letters (i - e) make the sound / aɪ /



rice أرز

- The letters (o - e) make the sound / oʊ /



nose أنف

• Help your child to listen and repeat the words to distinguish between the short and long vowels.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات ليميز بين الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة.

The prefix "re"

البادئة "re"

(Re) is a prefix that can be added before the verb and give the meaning of "again".

(Re) هي بادئة يمكن أن تضاف قبل الفعل وتعطى معنى (مرة أخرى).

Examples :

do → redo write → rewrite paint → repaint

He painted the room again. = He repainted the room.

He cleaned his bike again. = He recleaned his bike.



Pop Quiz on language

★ Complete the sentences with words from the box.

remake – repaint – reclean – reread

1. The colors of the room are not good. He will it.
2. His car is dirty. He will it.
3. Please, the flapjacks.
4. The story is interesting. She will it.

- Help your child learn the meaning of the prefix "re".
- Ask your child to complete the sentences with words from the box.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم معنى البادئة "re".
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل الجمل بكلمات من المربع.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False). استمع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

T F

1. Talla is from Egypt.

☐ ☐

2. Talla is excited.

☐ ☐

3. Suzanne goes to Talla's apartment.

☐ ☐

2 Read, order and write.

اقرأ، رتب وأكتب.

1. oats - stir - Add - and - well.

2. cleaned - bike - her - again - She.

3. learns - make - to - Talia - flapjacks.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

say - make - talk - Egyptian

Mohammed and Wang are good friends. Mohammed is

(1) and Wang is Chinese. Their parents are friends, too.

They (2) together a lot. They are sad when they

(3) goodbye.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

2. Ask your child to read, order and write the sentences correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يرتب ويكتب الجمل بطريقة صحيحة.

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words from the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات من الصندوق.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Dalia and Maria are good friends. Dalia is Egyptian and Maria is British. Dalia goes to Maria's apartment. Dalia is excited. They are drinking some tea. Maria has a plate in her hands. On the plate, there are big, square cookies. They are called flapjacks. Maria makes them with oats, butter and honey. Dalia loves flapjacks.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Dalia is from
 a. Egypt b. France c. China d. America
2. Maria is
 a. French b. Egyptian c. American d. British
3. You need to make flapjacks.
 a. oats b. vegetables c. apples d. salt

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What does Maria have in her hands ?

.....

5. What are the big, square cookies called ?

.....

5 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

A

1. Heba and Toka •
2. Flapjacks •
3. Slice the flapjacks •
4. He recleaned •

B

- ☐ a. are vegetables.
- ☐ b. are big, square cookies.
- ☐ c. his bike.
- ☐ d. are good friends.
- ☐ e. into small squares.

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).

6 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

what is your favorite egyptian dessert

7 Write a paragraph of about FOUR (4) sentences using the following guiding elements :

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من ٤ جمل مستخدماً العناصر المرشدة الآتية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

How can you make flapjacks ?

Guiding words :

- melt
- honey
- sugar
- oats



Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

7. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (4) sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن الموضوع المعطى مستخدماً الكلمات المساعدة.

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



Vocabulary

hundred	مائة	numerical	عددي
thousand	ألف	ascending	تصاعدي
sign	علامة	digits	الأرقام

Learn

How do you write and read 6-digit numbers ?

265,814					
Hundred thousands	Ten thousands	Thousands	Hundreds	Tens	Ones
2	6	5	8	1	4
2 hundred thousand 200,000	60 thousand 60,000	5 thousand 5,000	8 hundred 800	ten 10	four 4

Word form : Two hundred, sixty-five thousand, and eight hundred fourteen

544,432 Five hundred, forty-four thousand, and four hundred thirty-two

178,880 One hundred, seventy-eight thousand and eight hundred eighty

- Help your child listen and repeat the words.
- Help your child identify the ascending order.
- Help your child learn how to read large numbers.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويردد الكلمات.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الترتيب التصاعدي.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يقرأ الأرقام الكبيرة.

1 How to arrange numbers in ascending order

كيف ترتب الأرقام ترتيبًا تصاعديًا

Ex. : Arrange in ascending order:

1. 90,780 - 90,230 - 90,633

90,230 - 90,633 - 90,780

2. 780,050 - 791,005 - 779,500

779,500 - 780,050 - 791,005



2 Comparing numbers :

مقارنة الأرقام

Compare 2,349 and 2,617.

Step 1

Begin at the left. Compare.

2,349 } Both numbers have
2,617 } 2 thousand.

Step 2

Find the first place where the digits are different. Compare

2,349 } 3 hundred is less
2,617 } than 6 hundred.

So, 2,349 < 2,617

or 2,617 > 2,349



When comparing numbers, the number which has more number of digits is the greater.

5843 > 798

The signs

العلامات

> greater than

أكبر من

< less than

أصغر من

= equals to

يساوي

Notes for parents

1. Help your child learn about ascending order.

• This means we should write the smallest number first and then continue to the largest number.

2. Help your child identify how we can compare numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الترتيب التصاعدي.

هذا يعني أننا يجب أن نكتب الرقم الأصغر أولاً ثم الاستمرار حتى الوصول إلى الرقم الأكبر.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية مقارنة الأرقام.

1 Read and write the numbers into letters.

اقرأ وأكتب الأرقام بالحروف.

1. 709,818

2. 870,404

3. 30,210

2 Put the correct sign (< , > , or =).

ضع العلامة الصحيحة.

1. 790,003

7,900,303

2. ten million

10,000,000

3. 202,750

203,760

4. 99,999

100,000

5. 233,346

220,346

6. 7000

seven thousand



3 Arrange the following numbers in an ascending order.

رتب الأرقام الآتية ترتيبًا تصاعديًا.

1. 698,881 - 690,882 - 690,880

The order is : ---, --- - ---, --- - ---, ---

2. 30,000 - 30,120 - 18,700

The order is : ---, --- - ---, --- - ---, ---

3. 88,050 - 88,005 - 88,500

The order is : ---, --- - ---, --- - ---, ---

1. Ask your child read and write the numbers in letters.

2. Ask your child to put the correct sign (< , > , or =).

3. Ask your child to arrange the given numbers in an ascending order.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب الأرقام بالحروف.

اطلب من طفلك أن يضع العلامة الصحيحة (< , > , or =).

اطلب من طفلك أن يربط الأرقام المعطاة ترتيبًا تصاعديًا.

Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

land	ارض	famous	مشهور
governorate	محافظة	life	حياة
catch	يصطاد		

Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

تنويه

Extra vocabulary

Damietta	دمياط	part	جزء
wheat	قمح	Domiat	دمياطى
lemon	ليمون	people	ناس
guava	جوافة	live	يعيش
fisherman	صياد	sheep	خروف/خراف
million	مليون (رقم)	rich in	غنى ب / ملي ب



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look and write the words.

انظر واكتب الكلمات.

1.



2.



3.



4.



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen to the words and repeat them.
- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words according to the given pictures.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور المعطاة.

Food from Damietta governorate

الطعام من محافظة دمياط

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

The land⁽¹⁾ in Damietta governorate⁽²⁾ is rich in⁽³⁾ nutrients⁽⁴⁾. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat⁽⁵⁾, lemons⁽⁶⁾, grapes, and guavas. Fishermen⁽⁷⁾ catch⁽⁸⁾ thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate, too. Domiati cheese is very famous⁽⁹⁾.

About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. Life⁽¹⁰⁾ is good in Damietta !



Check Vocabulary

- (1) أرض
- (2) محافظة
- (3) غنى بـ
- (4) عناصر غذائية
- (5) قمح
- (6) ليمون
- (7) صيادون
- (8) يصطاد
- (9) مشهور
- (10) حياة

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. What is the land of Damietta rich in ?

- The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.

Practise

2. What do the farmers grow ?

3. How many people live in Damietta governorate ?

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6

1 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- (A)**
1. Damietta is famous
 2. About 1.5 million Egyptians live in
 3. The farmers grow
 4. The land in Damietta is rich in
 5. Fishermen catch thousands of

- (B)**
- ☐ a. Damietta governorate.
 - ☐ b. tomatoes, potatoes and wheat.
 - ☐ c. for Domiati cheese.
 - ☐ d. and sheep.
 - ☐ e. fish in the sea.
 - ☐ f. nutrients.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص من الكلمات من المربع.

catch – live – goats – grow

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can (1) rice, tomatoes, wheat and grapes. Fishermen (2) thousands of fish in the sea. Cows, (3) and sheep live in Damietta governorate. Domiati cheese is very famous.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. famous – cheese – for – Domiati – is – Damietta.

2. good – Damietta – Life – is – in.

3. in – Who – Damietta – lives – governorate ?

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and match each part from column (A) with its suitable part from column (B).
2. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.
3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make a correct sentence.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل كل جزء من العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص من الكلمات من الصندوق.

اطلب من طفلك أن يعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة. Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

- 1.** The land in Damietta governorate is rich in
a. sugar b. nutrients c. governorates
- 2.** Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the
a. market b. kitchen c. sea
- 3.** The farmers can rice, tomatoes and potatoes.
a. grow b. read c. talk
- 4.** Domiat cheese is very
a. famous b. dirty c. sweet
- 5.** About 1.5 million Egyptians in Damietta governorate.
a. help b. try c. live

5 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes, and guavas. About one and a half million people live in Damietta. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta.

A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Engineers catch fish in the sea.
2. Farmers grow wheat and tomatoes in Damietta.
3. Life in Damietta is very good.

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How many people live in Damietta ?

5. What is Damietta famous for ?

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويجب عن الأسئلة.

TEST YOUR SKILLS

I feel good



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.
 اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

- A. banana
 watermelon
 That's right!
 gastric juice
 lungs

- B.

 قصب السكر
 يبدو شهياً!
 الحجاب الحاجز
 ضمادة طبية
 نزيف بالأنف

My Language

2 Read and complete with "and" or "but".
 اقرأ وأكمل بـ "and" أو "but".

- In winter, it is cold wet.
- It was an easy test, I failed.
- It's an old black white film.

My Reading

3 Read and circle the odd one out.
 اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة.

- mangoes milk grapes
- esophagus stomach remove
- plants nosebleed scrape
- breakfast lunch raise

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence.
 ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

1. stay away from smoke

2. What are flapjacks

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 1



grapes



chicken



rice



onions



stomach



lungs



tomatoes



football



sugarcane



watermelon



digestive system

Long vowels

/ eɪ /



cake

/ aɪ /



rice

/ oʊ /



nose

Short vowels

/ ɪ /



mom

/ ɪ /



mix

/ æ /

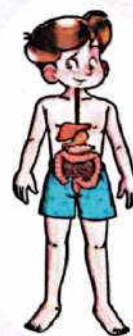


bag



- "but" to show contrast.
- I love playing video games, **but** I only play them on Saturdays.
- "and" to add two ideas together.
- I play football **and** basketball.
- The prefix "re" = again
- **Re**do the band-aid.

- We use our **digestive system** to digest what we eat.



- We use our **respiratory system** when we breathe.





1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic		Guiding words	Sentences
Egyptian food	special		Mom made special food for us.
	grow - rice		We grow rice in Egypt.
	raise - chicken		We raise chickens in Egypt.
	farmers		Egyptian farmers produce many things.
Digestive System	digestive system		We use our digestive system to digest what we eat.
	chew - teeth		We chew food with our teeth.
	esophagus		The esophagus goes from the mouth to the stomach.
	mix - gastric juice		In the stomach, the food mixes with the gastric juice.
	energy - nutrients		The gastric juice changes the food into a simpler form to get energy and nutrients.
	small intestine		Food moves from the stomach to the small intestine.
	large intestine		The large intestine is around the small intestine.
Respiratory System	waste		The large intestine removes waste.
	respiratory system		We use our respiratory system when we breathe.
	breathe - nose		We breathe in air through our nose.
	diaphragm		The diaphragm goes down. It pulls air into our lungs.
	oxygen - blood		In lungs, the oxygen goes into the blood.
	heart - pump		The heart pumps blood around the body.
Damietta Governorate	carbon dioxide		The diaphragm pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs. We breathe out.
	land - rich		The land is rich in nutrients.
	farmers - grow		The farmers can grow rice, tomatoes, potatoes, and wheat.
	fishermen		Fishermen catch thousands of fish.
Flapjacks	cheese		Domiat cheese is very famous in Damietta.
	melt - heat		To make flapjacks, melt butter, sugar, and honey in a large pan over low heat.
	oats - stir		Add oats and salt and stir well.
	bake		Bake for 20 minutes.
	cold - slice		When flapjacks are cold, slice into small squares.

2. How to make a sentence:

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. chickens – raise – We – Egypt – in.
2. through – breathe – nose – We – our.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1		raise	
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. smoke – from – Stay – away.
2. eat – candy – a lot – Don't – of.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2		eat	

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. from – food – Which – comes – country – our ?
2. cola – never – drinks – Who ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1					
2	Who				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. you – Do – think – healthy – you – are ?
2. our – delicious – food – Is ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1				
2	Is			

3. Writing skill :

الغذاء يساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

I feel good

Food

1. I like
2. My favorite food is

Where

1. I eat it at home.
2. I eat it in a restaurant.

How often

1. I eat it once/twice a week.
2. I eat it every day.

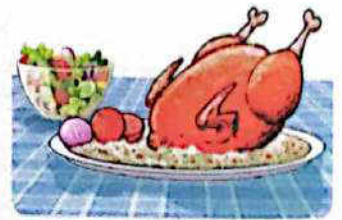
With whom

1. I eat it with my family.
2. I eat it with my friends.

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

healthy - food - friends - mom

I like healthy food. I eat it at home or in a restaurant. My mom cooks healthy food. I eat healthy food every day. I eat it with my family and friends.



Your turn دورك

digest - chew - teeth - esophagus - gastric juice

.....

.....

.....

.....



٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 How to have a healthy respiratory system

We use our respiratory system when we breathe⁽¹⁾. We should keep our respiratory system healthy⁽²⁾. We should exercise⁽³⁾. We should drink plenty of water⁽⁴⁾. We should stay away from smoke⁽⁵⁾. We should put green plants in our balcony⁽⁶⁾.

2 Flapjacks

Flapjacks are British cookies⁽⁷⁾. They are big, square cookies⁽⁸⁾. I make them with oats, butter, and honey⁽⁹⁾. I slice them into small squares⁽¹⁰⁾. I like to drink tea with flapjacks⁽¹¹⁾. They are delicious cookies⁽¹²⁾.

3 Foods in Egypt

My mom made special food for us⁽¹³⁾. Lunch is ready⁽¹⁴⁾. It looks delicious⁽¹⁵⁾. We have rice and chicken⁽¹⁶⁾. We grow rice and raise chickens in Egypt⁽¹⁷⁾. The food is yummy⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 Damietta governorate

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients⁽¹⁹⁾. The farmers grow a lot of different fruits⁽²⁰⁾. They can grow grapes and guavas⁽²¹⁾. They also grow a lot of vegetables like tomatoes and potatoes⁽²²⁾. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea⁽²³⁾. Cows, goats, and sheep live in Damietta governorate⁽²⁴⁾.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

- **1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).** **الاستماع واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.**

1. The land in Damietta is rich in fish.
2. The animals in Damietta are goats, cows and sheep.
3. The farmers grow watermelons, bananas and grapes.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- **2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.**

اقرأ واكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات من المربع.

make - football - cola - play

I'm in a wheelchair basketball team at school. We practice three times every week. I drink (1) , but I want to drink more water. I don't (2) video games because I'm very busy. I play basketball and I play (3) in the park.

- **3 Read and match (A) with (B).** **اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).**

A

1. The large intestine is
2. We chew food with
3. Stay away from
4. Do we raise
5. I have a scrape.

B

- ☐ a. I need to wash it.
- ☐ b. our teeth.
- ☐ c. chickens in Egypt ?
- ☐ d. smoke.
- ☐ e. around the small intestine.
- ☐ f. vegetables.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
2. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words from the box.
3. Ask your child to read and match each part from column (A) with its suitable part from column (B).

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات من الصندوق.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل كل جزء من العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat. We put food in our mouths. We chew food with our teeth. Then the food goes down the esophagus. It arrives in the stomach. In the stomach, the food mixes with the gastric juice. The gastric juice changes the food into a simpler form to get energy and nutrients. We need the energy and nutrients in our body.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The food goes down the to the stomach.
a. heart b. diaphragm c. lungs d. esophagus
2. We need the energy and in our body.
a. nutrients b. fuels
c. oil d. gases
3. We chew food with our
a. ears b. teeth c. hands d. nose

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does the food arrive ?

.....

5. What changes the food into a simpler form ?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. water – Drink – of – plenty.

.....

2. redid – homework – She – her.

.....

3. do – What – farmers – in – produce – Damietta ?

.....

4. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويحبب عن الأسئلة.

5. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We use our respiratory system when we
a. eat b. digest c. breathe d. push
2. I want to eat pizza, it isn't healthy.
a. or b. but c. so d. because
3. Damietta is for Domiati cheese.
a. cold b. hot c. famous d. happy
4. Egyptian farmers chickens.
a. give b. play c. raise d. build
5. We eat breakfast in the
a. evening b. morning c. night d. afternoon

7 Punctuate the following sentence. ضع علامة الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

suzanne is british

8 Write a paragraph of about (4 - 6) sentences using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربع - ست جمل مستخدماً العناصر المرشدة.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Being healthy

Guiding words :

- do sports
- fruit and vegetables
- a lot of candy
- plenty of water
- smoke
- exercise



Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

7. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

8. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 - 6 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 - 6 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى مستخدماً الكلمات المساعدة.

GENERAL EXERCISES On Unit 1

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1. Our house is so old. We need to it. (الدقهلية - بلقاس ٢٠٢٢)
 - a. rebuild b. recook c. reread
- 2. I like very much. We make sugar out of it. (نموذج وزارة ٢٠٢٢)
 - a. onions b. watermelon c. sugarcane
- 3. Rahma cut her legs. Use the to help her, please. (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)
 - a. school bus b. first-aid kit c. salt
- 4. I like playing tennis, I can't play it well. (الوادى الجديد ٢٠٢٢)
 - a. because b. so c. but

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

(A)

- 1. We breathe in air through our nose. (أسوان ٢٠٢٢) •
- 2. I eat vegetables and fruits. (سوهاج - سوهاج ٢٠٢٢) •
- 3. I make flapjacks with (الإسماعيلية - الإسماعيلية ٢٠٢٢) •
- 4. Damietta is famous for Domiati cheese. (البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٢) •

(B)

- ☐ a. I am healthy.
- ☐ b. We eat it every morning.
- ☐ c. It is a part of the respiratory system.
- ☐ d. oats, butter and honey.
- ☐ e. for 5 - 10 minutes.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.

1. yummy - mom - My - salad - makes. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٢)

2. recleaned - Mona - bike - her. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)

- 1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b or c.
- 2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
- 3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make a correct sentence.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

- **4 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list.** اقرأ واكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات من المربع.

color - beautiful - friends - repainted

My house was old. I wanted to make it (1)
I (2) it. The new (3) was green and red.
My friends helped me. (سراج - طما ٢٠٢٢)

- **5 Read the passage and answer the questions.** اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar is a young Egyptian boy. He lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. They grow some fruits like lemons and grapes, too. They also raise chickens and sell them to us to eat. Omar's mom makes delicious food with rice, potatoes and chicken. Life is good in the village.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Farmers grow fruits and vegetables.
2. Omar lives in a big city.
3. The village is famous for delicious milk.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Read and answer the following questions.

4. What do farmers raise ?

.....

5. What does Omar's mom make ?

(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٢)

.....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the given box.
5. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the given questions.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose.

1. In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our
(muscle – heart – blood)
2. Our pumps blood around our body.
(heart – bone – stomach)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

What – raise – grow

- Dad** : Which food comes from our country ?
Maged : I think we (1) rice in Egypt.
Dad : Yes, that's right. (2) else ?
Maged : I think we (3) chickens in Egypt.

C. The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Hippos are one of the most dangerous land animals.
2. A vet is a bad job.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

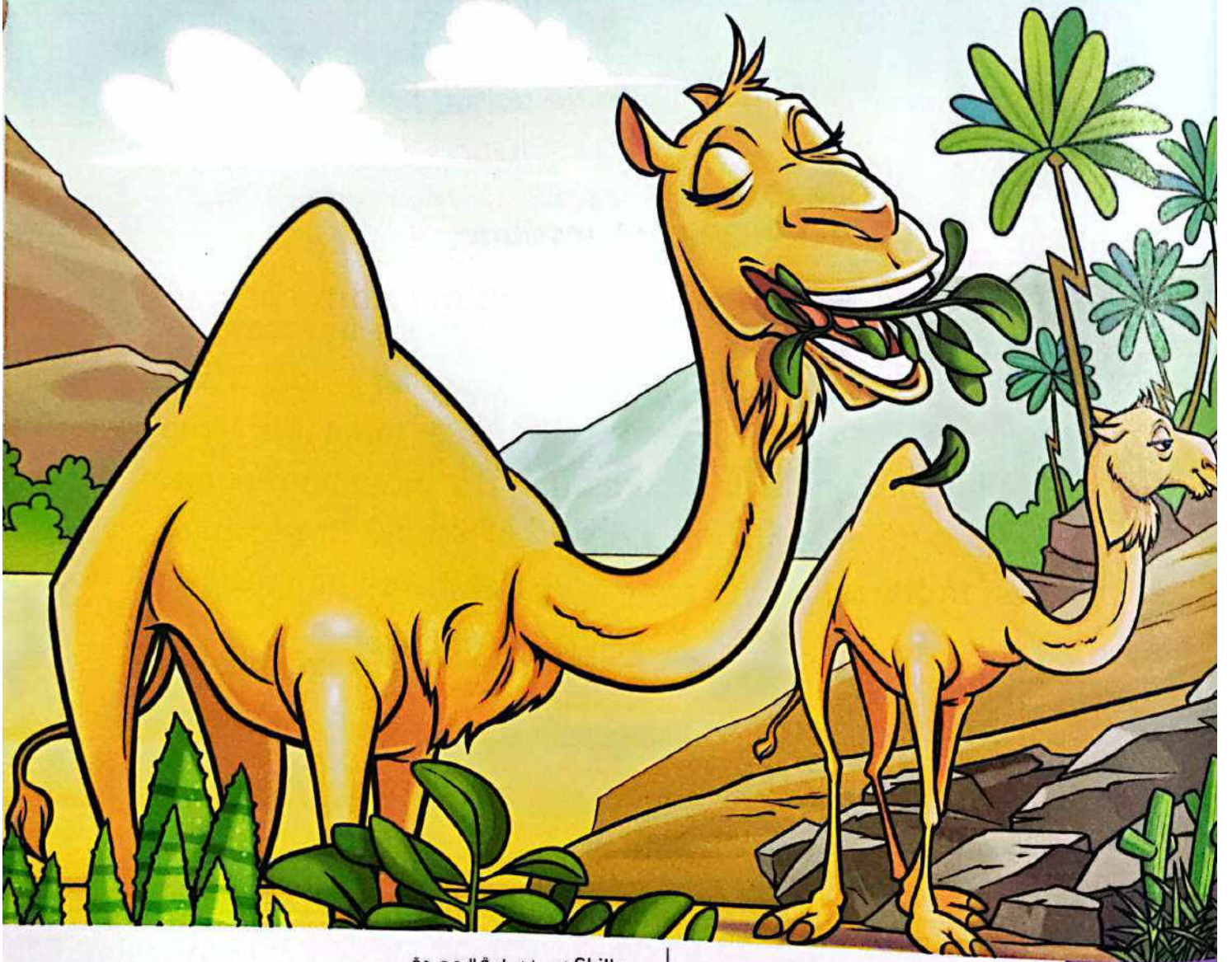
D. Vocabulary and structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. Fatima is very clever, she doesn't study her lessons.
a. or b. and c. but
2. The verb" "means to twist one of the body joints,
a. sprain b. cut c. hold

Desert Animals

الحيوانات الصحراوية



Skills . في نهاية الوحدة .
قاموس المعاصر اللغوي .

استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة .
Test your skills . في نهاية الوحدة .
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية .

لإتقان
الوحدة

Aims of unit two :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about desert animals.
- practice making comparisons.
- listen to a short story.

- استمع، اقرأ، ابحث واكتب عن الحيوانات الصحراوية.

- استمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثانية :

- learn about the difference between the / p / and / b / sounds.
- write a fact file.
- research and make a poster.

في هذه الوحدة سوف

- اتعلم الاختلاف بين الأصوات / p / و / b / .

- اكتب ملف حقائق.

- ابحث وأصنع ملصقاً .



Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Animals in Egypt



eagle نسر



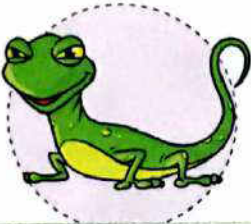
snake ثعبان



pelican بجعة



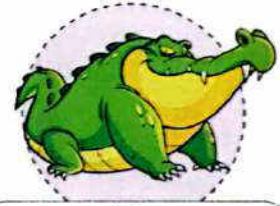
camel جمل



lizard سحلية



spider عنكبوت

fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك

crocodile تمساح

Extra vocabulary

fur	فراء - فرو	bird	طائر
feather	ريش	ugly	قبيح
wing	جناح	important	هام
beak	منقار	insect	حشرة
huge	ضخم	desert	صحراء
scary	مخيف	cute	لطيف / جذاب
helpful	معاون / مفيد	dangerous	خطير

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

look ينظر
control يتحكم

Past

looked
controled

Irregular

Present

think يعتقد
eat يأكل

Past

thought
ate

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- That's true.
- You're right !

- هذا حقيقي / صحيح.
- أنت على حق!



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Look and write.

1.



2.



3.



4.



2 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



g n w i

2.



d i p s r e

3.



m a l e c

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to look and write the words under each picture.
2. Ask your child to look, unscramble the letters and write the words correctly.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الكلمات أسفل كل صورة.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويرتب الحروف ويكتب الكلمات بطريقة صحيحة.



Listening and Reading

☆ **Listen, read and role-play.** استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Sara, Tarek and their Mom are talking about animals in Egypt.

سارة، طارق ووالدتهم يتحدثون عن الحيوانات في مصر.



Look at all these animals that live in our country.

انظر إلى كل هذه الحيوانات التي تعيش في بلدنا.



Look at the crocodile, it's huge !

أنظروا إلى التمساح، إنه ضخم !



Huge and scary ! ضخم ومخيف !



I think the spider is scarier.

أعتقد أن العنكبوت مخيف أكثر.



Yeah, but spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders.

نعم، لكن العناكب مفيدة جدًا. انهم يأكلون الحشرات. المزارعون يحبون العناكب.



OK, what about the snake and the crocodile ? They're dangerous, aren't they ?

حسنًا، وماذا عن الثعبان والتمساح ؟ إنهما خطيران، أليس كذلك ؟



Yes, that's true, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

نعم، هذا صحيح، لكنهما يقومان بعمل مهم للغاية. إنهما يأكلان الحشرات والطيور والسحالي. هذا يتحكم في عدد هذه الحيوانات الصغيرة.



Eagles do the same job. تقوم النسور بنفس العمل.



• Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.
- ساعد طفلك في الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

• **Note :** The verb "control" means to make the number of animals fewer. - فعل "يتحكم" يعني أن تجعل عدد الحيوانات أقل.



تأكل البجعة الأسماك الصغيرة. The pelican eats small fish.



You're right ! We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.
أنتم على حق ! نعتقد في بعض الأحيان أن بعض الحيوانات مخيفة أو قبيحة، لكن كلها مهمة.

Language

1 To ask about animals.

للسؤال عن الحيوانات.



Which animals are scary ?

أى الحيوانات مخيفة ؟



I think crocodiles are scary.

أعتقد أن التماسيح مخيفة.



2

When we ask for confirmation, we use "the question tag".

عندما نسأل للتأكد من شيء نستخدم "السؤال المذيّل" بمعنى "أليس كذلك".



Spiders are very helpful, aren't they ?

العناكب مفيدة جدًا، أليس كذلك ؟



Yes, that's true. They eat insects.

نعم، هذا صحيح. إنهم يأكلون الحشرات.



Notes for parents

1. Help your child ask and answer about animals.

2. Help your child to identify how to ask using the question tag.

When the statement is affirmative, the question tag is negative.

- He is clever, isn't he ?

When the statement is negative, the question tag is affirmative.

- It isn't dangerous, is it ?

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب أسئلة عن الحيوانات.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية السؤال مستخدمًا السؤال المذيّل.

عندما تكون الجملة مثبتة، يكون السؤال المذيّل منفي.

عندما تكون الجملة منفية، يكون السؤال المذيّل مثبت.

Dictation



لإنقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell

eagle نسر

fennec fox ثعلب الفنك

crocodile تمساح

snake ثعبان

spider عنكبوت

camel جمل

pelican بجعة

wing جناح

fur فراء

feather ريش

beak منقار

scary مخيف

insect حشرة

lizard سحلية

huge ضخم

Complete

e _ g _ e

fe _ _ ec f _ x

cr _ cod _ l _

s _ _ ke

sp _ d _ r

c _ m _ l

pel _ c _ n

w _ n _

f _ r

f _ a _ _ er

b _ _ k

s _ a _ y

i _ s _ c _

l _ z _ r _

h _ g _

Write

• Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ، يتهجى ، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

scary – makes – controls – insects

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat (1) _____, birds and lizards. This (2) _____ the number of these small animals. We sometimes think some animals are (3) _____ or ugly, but they are all important.

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. A crocodile is
2. The pelican eats
3. Spiders eat
4. Snakes and crocodiles control
5. Some animals are scary, but

B

- ☐ a. small fish.
- ☐ b. they are important.
- ☐ c. insects.
- ☐ d. the number of small animals.
- ☐ e. huge and scary.
- ☐ f. in our country.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. scary – is – think – I – the – spider.

2. do – crocodiles – snakes – and – What – eat ?

3. these - all - at - animals - Look.

4. spiders - like - Farmers.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

2. Ask your child to read and match each part from column (A) with its suitable part from column (B).

3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. A pelican eats small
a. fish b. tigers c. lions
2. Crocodiles eat insects, birds and
a. lizards b. elephants c. lions
3. What the snake ? - It's scary.
a. up b. about c. of
4. Spiders are very They eat insects.
a. helpful b. huge c. dangerous
5. Snakes are very
a. cute b. dangerous c. nice

5 Write a paragraph of **FOUR (4)** sentences of about **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Crocodiles and snakes

Guiding words :

- control • dangerous
- lizards • insects



6 Punctuate the following sentence.

which animals are cute

4. Ask your child to choose the correct word from a , b or c.
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

Lesson 2

CLIL: Science

Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

How tall/long ... ?	كم الطول (رأسي) / (أفقي) ... ؟	female	أنثى
How heavy ... ?	كم الوزن ... ؟	male	ذكر
open areas	مناطق مفتوحة	mammals	ثدييات

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

mice	فئران	steppe eagle	نسر السهوب
thick	سميك	heat	حرارة
warm	دافئ	north	شمال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

travel ينتقل / يسافر
lift يرفع
need يحتاج

Past

traveled
lifted
needed

Irregular

Present

lose يخسر / يفقد
hear يسمع
see يرى

Past

lost
heard
saw

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- during the day - أثناء النهار
- at night - في الليل / ليلاً
- about 1 kilogram - حوالي 1 كيلوجرام
- lift its head up - يرفع رأسه لأعلى

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

Animal fact file

Fact file ملف حقائق

A fact file is a collection of information about a particular subject or a product.

ملف الحقائق عبارة عن مجموعة من المعلومات عن موضوع معين أو منتج معين.

★ Read the fact file and complete. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وأكمل.

1 Fennec Fox

Where does it live ? أين يعيش ؟	In the deserts of North Africa في صحاري شمال أفريقيا
How tall is it ? كم طوله ؟ (رأسى)	20 centimeters ٢٠ سنتيمترات
How heavy is it ? كم وزنه ؟	about 1 kilogram حوالى ١ كيلوجرام
How long is it ? كم طوله ؟ (أفقى)	30 - 40 centimeters من ٣٠ - ٤٠ سنتيمترات
What does it eat ? ماذا يأكل ؟	insects, small lizards, mice حشرات ، سحالي صغيرة ، فئران

insects – big – desert – hot – fur – cold

The fennec fox lives in the (1) It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are (2) really big! The fennec fox needs big ears to hear (3) and small animals.

During the day, it's (4) in the desert. The fox loses heat from its ears. At night it's (5) The fox's thick (6) keeps it warm.



• Learn : m = meter (متر (الطول) kg = kilogram (كيلوجرام (الوزن)

• Ask your child to read the fact file and complete the paragraph using the words in the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ملف الحقائق ويكمل الفقرة الإنشائية مستخدماً الكلمات فى المربع.

• يعيش ثعلب الفنك فى الصحراء إنه أصغر من الثعالب الأخرى. أذنيه كبيرة. كبيرة جداً ! يحتاج ثعلب الفنك أذان كبيرة لسمع الحشرات والحيوانات الصغيرة. خلال النهار ، يكون الجو حاراً فى الصحراء. يفقد الثعلب الحرارة من أذنيه. فى الليل ، يكون الجو بارد. فراء الثعلب الكثيف يحافظ على دفئه.

☆ اقرأ ملف الحقائق وأكمل. Read the fact file and complete.

2 Steppe Eagle

How long does it live ?
كم المدة التي يعيشها ؟

حوالي ٣٠ - ٤٠ عام around 30 - 40 years

How heavy is it ?
كم وزنه ؟

حوالي ٣ كيلوجرامات around 3 kilograms

How long is it ?
كم طوله ؟

من الجناح للجناح حوالي ١٧٠ سم from wing to wing around 170 centimeters

wings - steppe - beautiful - female

Look at the eagle flying. It's (1), isn't it ? The (2) eagle travels from Europe to Africa in winter. It lives in very big, open areas. It eats other birds, small mammals and rabbits. When it opens its (3), it's longer than you! The (4) is bigger and heavier than the male.



☆ Read the fact file and learn. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وتعلم.

3 Snake

ثعبان الكوبرا

What is it ? ما هذا ؟	It's a snake. انه ثعبان (الكوبرا)
What is it doing ? ماذا يفعل ؟	The snake is lifting its head up. انه يرفع راسه عاليًا.
How does it feel ? كيف يشعر ؟	It probably feels scared if it saw someone or something. ربما يشعر بالخوف إذا رأى شخص أو شيء ما

Notes for parents

- Help your child read the fact file and complete the paragraph using the words in the box.

- Help your child read and learn from the given fact file.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ملف الحقائق ويكمل الفقرة الإنسانية مستخدمًا الكلمات في المربع.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم من ملف الحقائق المعطى له.
• انظر إلى النسر الطائر. إنه جميل، أليس كذلك ؟ نسر السهوب يسافر من أوروبا إلى أفريقيا في الشتاء. إنه يعيش في مناطق مفتوحة كبيرة جدًا. يأكل الطيور الأخرى والتديبات الصغيرة والأرانب. عندما يفتح جناحيه، فهو يكون أطول منك. إن الأنثى أكبر وأثقل من الذكر.



Pop Quiz on Reading

★ Look, read and write.

1

Fact File

Paragraph



Where does it live ?

.....

What does it eat ?

.....

How heavy is it ?

.....

The fennec fox lives in the desert.

It is 20 centimeters tall and 40 centimeters long. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs about 1 kg. It has big ears to hear insects and small animals.

2

Fact File

Where does the steppe eagle live ?

very big open areas

How long is it ?

from wing to wing around 170 cm

How heavy is it ?

around 3 kg

How long does it live ?

around 30 - 40 years

Paragraph



.....
.....
.....

• Ask your child to look, read the fact files / paragraphs and write.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ملفات الحقائق / الفقرات الإنشائية ويكتب.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The steppe eagle eats plants.
2. The steppe eagle travels from Africa to Europe in winter.
3. The steppe eagle lives in very big, open areas.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The fennec fox
2. The steppe eagle
3. How long does
4. The fox's thick fur
5. The eagle has strong wing, so

B

- ☐ a. eats small fish.
- ☐ b. eats birds, small mammals and rabbits.
- ☐ c. keeps it warm.
- ☐ d. the steppe eagle live ?
- ☐ e. it can fly easily.
- ☐ f. has big ears.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. at – the – Look – flying – eagle.
2. is – its – The snake – head – up – lifting.
3. you – animal – scares – Which ?
4. ears – has – fox – big – The fennec.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen to the text and write (T) for the right answer or (F) for the wrong answer.
2. Ask your child to read and match each part from column (A) with its suitable part from column (B).
3. Ask your child to reorder the words and write them correctly to make correct sentences/questions.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are really big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals. It eats insects, small lizards and mice. It weighs about 1 kilogram. The fox loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

A. Read and write (T) True or F (False).

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

1. The fennec fox loses heat from its ears.
2. The fennec fox is bigger than other foxes.
3. The fennec fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.

B. Answer the following questions.

4. How heavy is the fennec fox ?

5. Where does the fennec fox live ?

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The desert is at night.
a. cold b. hot c. sunny d. warm
2. The fennec fox's fur keeps it warm.
a. light b. huge c. thick d. small
3. The eagle is bigger and heavier than the male.
a. female b. famous c. baby d. nervous
4. The fennec fox needs big to hear insects.
a. eyes b. ears c. legs d. feet
5. The fennec fox is than other foxes.
a. longer b. taller c. bigger d. smaller
6. The fennec fox lives in the
a. sea b. desert c. sky d. forest

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

6 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

winter - areas - summer - mammals

The steppe eagle is a large bird. When it opens its wings, it's longer than you! It lives in very big, open (1) It eats other birds, small (2) and rabbits. It travels from Europe to Africa in (3) It's beautiful.

7 Write a paragraph of **FOUR (4)** sentences using the following guiding elements :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Steppe eagle

Guiding words :

- beautiful
- eat
- female
- male



8 Punctuate the following sentence.

which animal can fly

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the given box.

7. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (4) sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

8. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

amazing	مدهش	flat feet	أقدام مسطحة / مستوية
beautiful	جميل	strong	قوى
perfect	مثالي	noisy	مزعج - مليء بالضوضاء
large	كبير		

تنويه ▪ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ▪ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ▪ قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

make clothes	يصنع ملابس	fresh water	ماء عذب
surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش	special	مميز
hump	سنام (الجمال)	grass	عشب - حشائش
sand	رمال	delicious	لذيذ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

carry

يحمل

Past

carried

Present

cross

يعبر

Past

crossed

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- perfect for the desert
- for a long time
- get angry
- Be careful !

مناسب / ملائم للصحراء
 لمدة طويلة
 يغضب
 كن حذرًا !

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

★ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

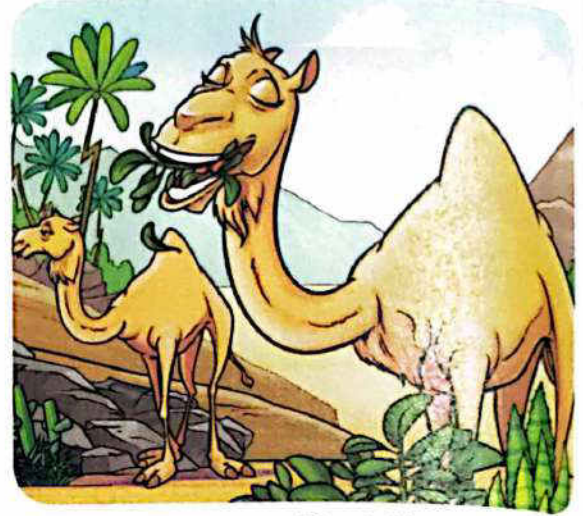
Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

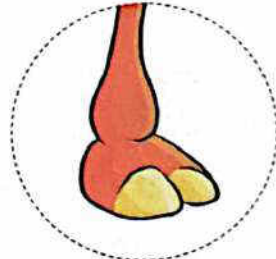
What is surprising about camels ?

ما هو المدهش بالنسبة للجمال ؟

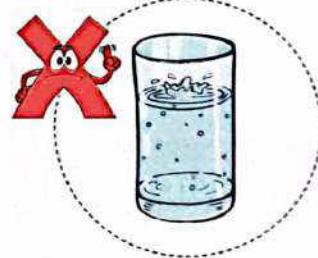
Camels⁽¹⁾ are amazing! They're beautiful, strong⁽²⁾ animals. They help us to carry⁽³⁾ things and people to cross⁽⁴⁾ the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur⁽⁵⁾ to make clothes ! Camels are perfect⁽⁶⁾ for the desert. Here's why :



Camels have large, flat feet⁽⁷⁾ so they can walk on the sand.



Camels can live without⁽⁸⁾ water for a long time.



Camels have special ways⁽⁹⁾ to close their noses and eyes to stop⁽¹⁰⁾ the sand from coming in.



But be careful ! Camels are very noisy and they can get angry.

Read and tick

(✓) Or (X).

Learn

1. Camels help us carry things to cross the desert.

(✓)

Practise

2. Camels are perfect for the forest.

()

3. Camels can't live without water for a long time.

()

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures, read the text and identify.



ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ النص ويتعرف.

الجمال مدهشة ! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. هم يساعدوننا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لعبرون الصحراء. لديهم أقدام كبيرة، مستوية لذلك يستطيعون المشي على الرمال. لديهم طرق خاصة ليغلقوا أنوفهم وعيونهم لمنع الرمال من الدخول فيهم.

الجمال مدهشة ! إنها حيوانات جميلة وقوية. هم يساعدوننا في حمل الأشياء والأشخاص لعبرون الصحراء. لديهم أقدام كبيرة، مستوية لذلك يستطيعون المشي على الرمال. لديهم طرق خاصة ليغلقوا أنوفهم وعيونهم لمنع الرمال من الدخول فيهم.

★ Read the fact file and identify. اقرأ ملف الحقائق وتعرف.

The differences between horses and camels.

information animal	Horse 	Camel 
How tall is it ?	1.4 - 1.8 m	1.8 - 2.0 m
How heavy is it ?	380 - 550 kg	400 - 650 kg
How fast is it ?	88 km/h	65 km/h
How long does it live ?	25 - 30 years	40 years

Horses have large, beautiful eyes.

الخيول لديها عيون كبيرة وجميلة.



Horses have strong teeth. They like to eat grass and drink fresh water.

الخيول لديها أسنان قوية. وهى تحب أن تأكل الحشائش وتشرب ماء عذب.



Language

1 Adjectives الصفات

- He is a **tall** man.
- The whale is **big**.

★ الصفة تستخدم لوصف الاسم وتأتى قبله :
★ الصفة تأتى بعد (verb to be) :

• Help your child read the fact file and identify the differences between horses and camels.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ملف الحقائق ويتعرف على الاختلافات بين الخيول والجمال.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصفات.

1. Help your child learn about adjectives.

• Learn : km/h = kilometer per hour (الكيلومتر فى الساعة (للسرعة)

2 Comparative (شخصين / شيئين) المقارنة بين اثنين

A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

★ عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات المقطع الواحد نستخدم :

(adj. صفة + er) + than


★ يضاف لمعظم الصفات القصيرة (er) وبعدها (than) :

- old → older - fast → faster
★ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتھية بحرف (ساكن) مسبوق بحرف (متحرك) يضاعف الحرف الأخير ثم تضاف (er) :


- big → bigger - hot → hotter
★ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتھية بحرف (y) مسبوق بحرف (ساكن)، يحذف حرف (y) ويضاف (ier) :

- noisy → noisier - heavy → heavier
★ أما الصفات القصيرة المكونة من (مقطع واحد) ومنتھية بحرف (e) نضيف حرف (r) فقط :
- brave → braver - nice → nicer


Examples :

 The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes.



 The female eagle is bigger and heavier than the male.




 The eagle is bigger than the rat.




B. Long adjectives :

صفات طويلة : صفات مكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر من مقطع.
dangerous / interesting / enormous / beautiful .. etc.
وللمقارنة بين اثنين في صفة طويلة نستخدم :

more + long adj. (صفة طويلة) + than

 A snake is more dangerous than a fox.

 Crocodiles are more dangerous than the fish.



Notes for parents

2. Help your child learn about comparative short/long adjectives. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الصفات القصيرة/الطويلة في المقارنة.

3 Asking Questions with (How + adj). توجيه اسئلة باستخدام (صفة + How).



How tall ? تستخدم للسؤال عن طول شخص أو شجرة أو مبنى.

- How tall is the fennec fox ?
- It's 20 cm.



How long ? تستخدم للسؤال عن الطول الأفقى.

- How long is the steppe eagle ?
- It's around 170 cm from wing to wing.



How heavy ? تستخدم للسؤال عن الوزن.

- How heavy is the horse ?
- It's 380 kg.



How fast ? تستخدم للسؤال عن السرعة.

- How fast is the camel ?
- It is 65 kph.



Pop Quiz on language

★ Choose the correct answer form a , b or c :

1. A rabbit is than a dog.
 - a. small b. smaller c. smallest
2. Lions are more dangerous cows.
 - a. as b. like c. than
3. Pizza is delicious than vegetables.
 - a. more b. as c. larger
4. An airplane is than a bicycle ?
 - a. bigger b. big c. as big
5. How is the horse ? - It is 88 kph.
 - a. fast b. long c. heavy

3. Help your child ask questions using (How + adj.).
• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- ساعد طفلك أن يسأل باستخدام (How) وبعدها (صفة).
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

- Camels' milk is delicious.
- Camels can carry people to cross the desert.
- We use camels' fur to make tables.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- elephants – than – are – thinner – Dogs.
- camels – more beautiful – than – Are – horses ?
- noisier – spiders – than – are – Parrots.
- are – for – Camels – perfect – the desert.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

- A car is than an airplane.
a. slow b. more slow c. slower
- How is the horse ? - It's 380 - 550 kg.
a. long b. fast c. heavy
- A snake is dangerous than a fox.
a. much b. more c. a lot
- Camels can live water for a long time.
a. with b. without c. by
- The computer is more expensive a cell phone.
a. the b. than c. then
- Camels are than horses. They are about 2.0 meters.
a. slower b. faster c. taller

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer or (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة أو (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
- Ask your child reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.
- Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

grass – fresh – tall – eyes

Horses are beautiful, fast animals. Horses eat (1)..... and drink (2)..... water. They have large, beautiful (3)..... . They have strong teeth.

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Camels are very
2. Camels have special ways to close their
3. The mouse is smaller
4. Camels are perfect for
5. Camels can live without

B

- a. than the elephant.
- b. noses and eyes from the sand.
- c. the desert.
- d. beautiful eyes.
- e. water for a long time.
- f. noisy.

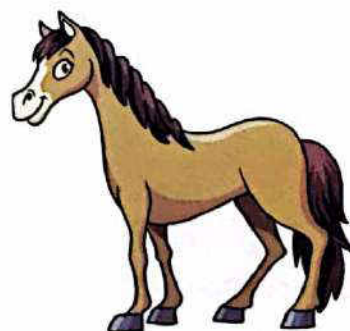
6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The horse

Guiding fact file :

How tall is it ?	1.4 - 1.8 m
How heavy is it ?	380 - 550 kg
What about its teeth ?	strong
What does it eat / drink ?	grass/fresh water



4. Ask your child to read the text and complete it with the words from the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويكمل بالكلمات الموجودة فى المربع.

5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of (4) sentences about the given topic using the guiding fact file.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب 4 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى مستخدماً ملف الحقائق المساعد.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

paw	كف (قدم حيوان)	bear	دُب
claw	مخالب (حيوان / طائر)	scared	خائف
pelican	بجعة	beak	منقار

تنويه ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

juicy	كثير العصارة	intelligent	ذكي
ready	جاهز - مستعد	surprised	مندعش

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

reach يصل
 whisper يهمس
 shout يصيح / يصرخ

Past

reached
 whispered
 shouted

Irregular

Present

take يأخذ
 say يقول
 has/ have يملك
 fly يطير
 hear يسمع

Past

took
 said
 had
 flew
 heard

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- look scared
- lift its paw
- take out
- fly away with

يبدو خائفًا
 يرفع الحيوان كفه
 يخرج ...
 يطير بعيدًا مع

- Excuse me !
- look down
- I'm sorry !

معذرة !
 ينظر للأسفل
 أنا آسف !

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

The Pelican and the Bear البجعة والدب

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

The beginning

A pelican⁽¹⁾ and a bear⁽²⁾ are in the river. They are very hungry⁽³⁾. They are both looking at a big, juicy⁽⁴⁾ fish.

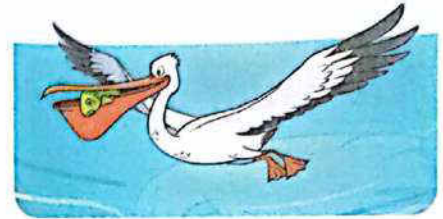
The middle

The bear reaches⁽⁵⁾ for the fish. It lifts its paw⁽⁶⁾. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water. The bear sees the pelican. The pelican sees the bear. "Excuse me," the pelican says, "That's my fish." The bear is surprised and angry. "Pelican, look at my claws⁽⁷⁾. Now look at my teeth. That's my fish." The pelican looks scared. "I'm sorry, Bear," it whispers⁽⁸⁾.

The bear is stronger than the pelican. The bear is happy because it has a big fish for dinner.

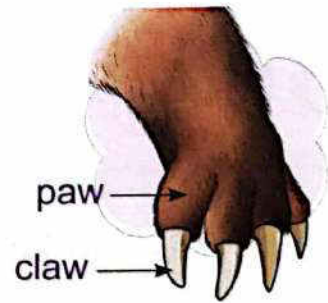
The end

Then the bear looks down. Oh no ! It can't see the fish. It can't see the pelican. "Pelican, where are you ?" Bear shouts. There is no pelican. But he can hear the happy pelican flying away with the fish in its mouth.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) بجعة
- (2) دُب
- (3) جائع
- (4) كثير العصارة
- (5) يصل
- (6) كف (قدم حيوان)
- (7) مخلب (حيوان / طائر)
- (8) يهمس



Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Why is the pelican scared of the bear ?
- Because the bear is stronger.

Practise

2. Who had the fish at the end of the story ?
3. Why does the pelican open its beak ?

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

بجعة و دب فى النهر. إنهم جائعون جدًا. كلاهما ينظران إلى سمكة كبيرة ومليلة بالعصارة. يصل الدب إلى السمكة. يرفع مخلبه. البجعة تفتح منقارها. إنها جاهزة لإخراج السمكة من الماء. يرى الدب البجعة. ترى البجعة الدب. قالت البجعة "عفوًا هذه سمكتي". الدب مندهش وغاضب "بجعة، انظري إلى مخالبى. انظري الآن إلى أسناني. هذه سمكتي." البجعة تبدو خائفة وتهمس للدب. "أنا أسفة أيها الدب". الدب أقوس من البجعة. الدب سعيد لأنه يمتلك سمكة كبيرة للعشاء. ثم ينظر الدب للأسفل. أوه لا إنه لا يستطيع رؤية السمكة. إنه لا يستطيع رؤية البجعة. الدب يصرخ "أين أنت أيها البجعة ؟" لا يوجد بجعة. لكنه يستطيع سماع البجعة السعيدة وهي تطير بعيدًا والسمكة فى فمها.

General Exercises

on Lesson **4**
(part 1)

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The pelican is stronger and bigger.
2. The bear is surprised and happy.
3. The pelican whispers, "I'm sorry."

T **F**

☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. does – the bear – angry – Why – look ?

.....

2. no – There – pelican – is.

.....

3. paw – The bear – its – lifts.

.....

4. strong – A pelican – claws – has.

.....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The bear is stronger •
2. The bear lifts •
3. The pelican and the bear •
4. The pelican takes the fish •
5. The bear is happy at first because •

B

- ☐ a. drink tea.
- ☐ b. are hungry.
- ☐ c. out of the water.
- ☐ d. its paw.
- ☐ e. it has a big fish for dinner.
- ☐ f. than the pelican.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer or (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و(F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

3. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل/أسئلة صحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

beak – paw – hungry – thirsty

A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very (1) They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its (2) The pelican opens its (3) It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. A pelican and a bear are in the to eat fish.
a. home b. sky c. street d. river
2. The bear has a
a. paw b. beak c. wing d. feather
3. The bear is than the pelican.
a. thinner b. higher c. stronger d. smaller
4. A pelican opens its
a. claw b. beak c. hand d. paw

6 Punctuate the following sentences.

1. the pelican looks scared
.....
2. the bear can t see the pelican
.....

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.
5. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentences.
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل المعطاة.



Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

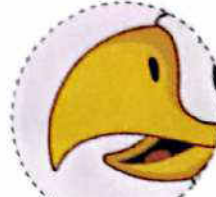
- The letter **b** makes the sound /b/.



bear دب



bird طائر



beak منقار

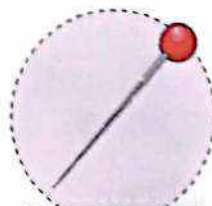


bee نحلة

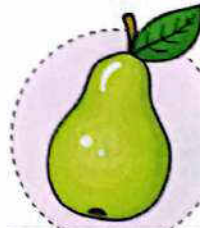
- The letter **p** makes the sound /p/.



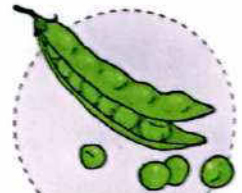
pelican بجعة



pin دبوس



pear كمثرى



peas بازلاء



Pop Quiz on Phonics

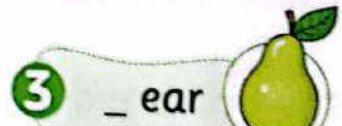
1 Look and write the missing sound.



1 _ ear



2 _ eas



3 _ ear



4 _ elican



5 _ in



6 _ ird

Notes for parents

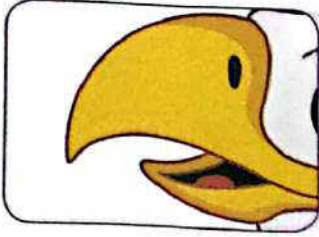
• Help your child listen to the words that have /b/, /p/ sounds and repeat them.

1. Ask your child to look and write the missing sound.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات /b/, /p/ ويرددهم.
اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر ويكتب الصوت الناقص.

2 Look, listen and circle.

1.

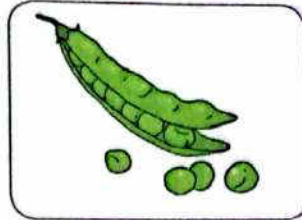


b

p

_ eak

2.

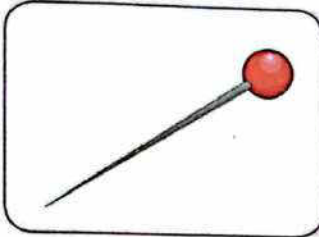


b

p

_ eas

3.



b

p

_ in

4.



b

p

_ ee

3 Listen and circle the odd sound out.

1. bear

pear

beak

bee

2. pin

peas

pelican

bird

4 Read and write.

pelican - pear - beak - bee - bird - peas - bear - pin

/ p /

1.
2.
3.
4.

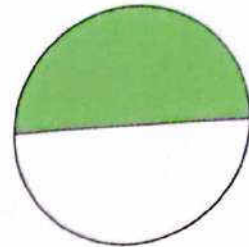
/ b /

1.
2.
3.
4.

2. Ask your child to look, listen and circle the correct sound then write it.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الصوت الصحيح ثم يكتبه.
3. Ask your child to listen and circle the odd sound out.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويضع دائرة حول الصوت المختلف.
4. Ask your child to read and write each word in its correct place.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب كل كلمة في مكانها الصحيح.

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

الكسر : A fraction



A fraction consists of two parts.
الكسر يتكون من جزئين.

البسط Numerator ← 1
المقام Denominator ← 2

Learn

- Descending order means to put or start from the largest to the smallest number. الترتيب التنازلى يعنى أن تضع أو تبدأ من الرقم الأكبر ثم الرقم الأصغر.

e.g : 13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 4, 3

- When comparing unit fractions, the one with the less denominator is greater. عندما نقارن بين وحدة الكسور، الكسر الذى لديه مقام أقل هو الرقم الأكبر.

$$\frac{1}{1}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}$$

Notes for parents

- Help your child to read and learn about fractions.
- The numerator tells how many parts are being identified.
- The denominator tells the total number of equal parts in the whole.

We use fractions in everyday life.

For example :

- Here's a simple milkshake recipe

$\frac{1}{2}$ a glass of milk, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of banana, $\frac{1}{4}$ cup of vanilla ice cream.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم عن الكسور.
البسط يذكر كم عدد الأجزاء المعدودة.
المقام يذكر الجزء الكلى فى الواحد الصحيح.

نحن نستخدم الكسور فى الحياة اليومية.

على سبيل المثال :

- وصفة لبن مخفوق بسيطة.

- نصف كوب من اللبن، ربع كوب من الموز، ربع كوب من آيس كريم الفانيليا.

General Exercises

on Lesson **4**
(part 3)

1 Match.

- 1 A fraction, its numerator is 1, its denominator is 4.

$$\frac{1}{8}$$

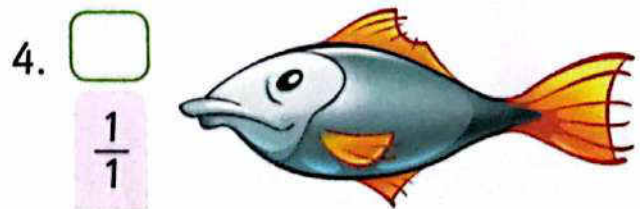
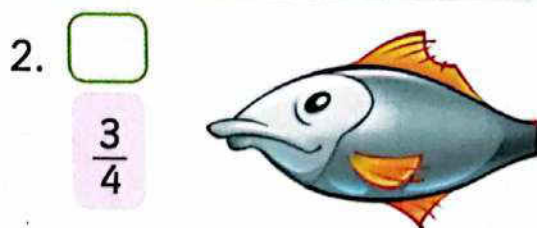
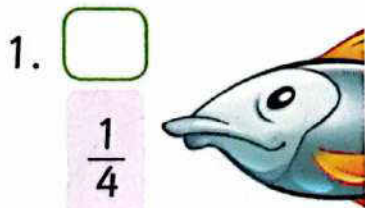
- 2 A fraction, its numerator is 1, its denominator is 3.

$$\frac{1}{4}$$

- 3 A fraction, its numerator is 1, its denominator is 8.

$$\frac{1}{3}$$

2 Look and put in descending order.



1. Ask your child to match each sentence with its correct fraction.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يصل كل جملة بالكسر الصحيح لها.

2. Ask your child to look at the pictures and put the fractions in descending order.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويضع الكسور في الترتيب التنازلي.

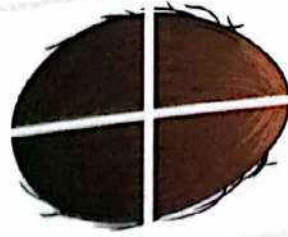
3 Count the equal parts. Circle the fraction that names one of the parts.

1.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

2.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

3.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

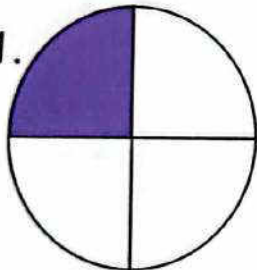
4.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

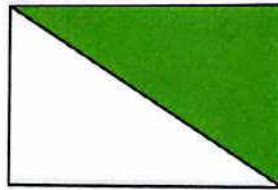
4 Circle the fraction that shows the fraction of the colored part.

1.



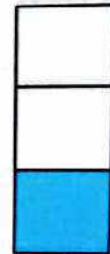
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

2.



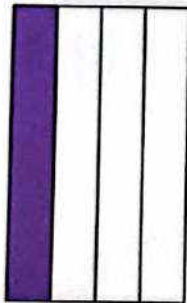
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

3.



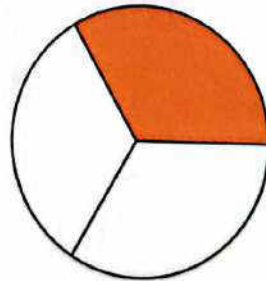
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

4.



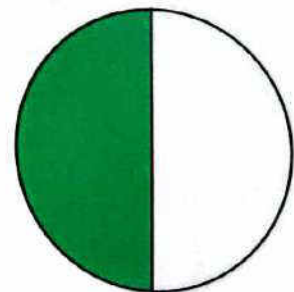
$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

5.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

6.



$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{1}{4}$

Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to count the equal parts then circle the correct fraction.

4. Ask your child to circle the correct fraction according to the given pictures.

اطلب من طفلك أن يعد الأجزاء المتساوية ثم يضع دائرة حول الكسر الصحيح.

اطلب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الكسر الصحيح طبقاً للصورة المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

rhin gazelle	غزال الریم	the naked mole rat (بدون شعر)	فأر الخلد العاری
hoof (hooves)	حافر (حوافر)	temperature	درجة حرارة
horns	قرون حیوان	coat	فراء حیوان

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	popular	معروف / مشهور
eastern Africa	شرق أفريقيا	unpopular	غير معروف / غير مشهور
leaves	أوراق شجر	cream	لون كريمي
dolphin	دولفين		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

Past

protect	يحمى	protected
need	يحتاج	needed
want	يريد	wanted

Irregular

Present

Past

learn	يتعلم / يعرف	learnt / learned
-------	--------------	------------------

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- look for يبحث عن
- have yellow-white coats لديهم فراء أبيض يميل إلى الاصفرار
- get ill يصاب بمرض
- for a very long time لفترة طويلة جدًا
- walk around يتجول حول
- look very beautiful يبدو جميلًا للغاية
- protect from يحمى من

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

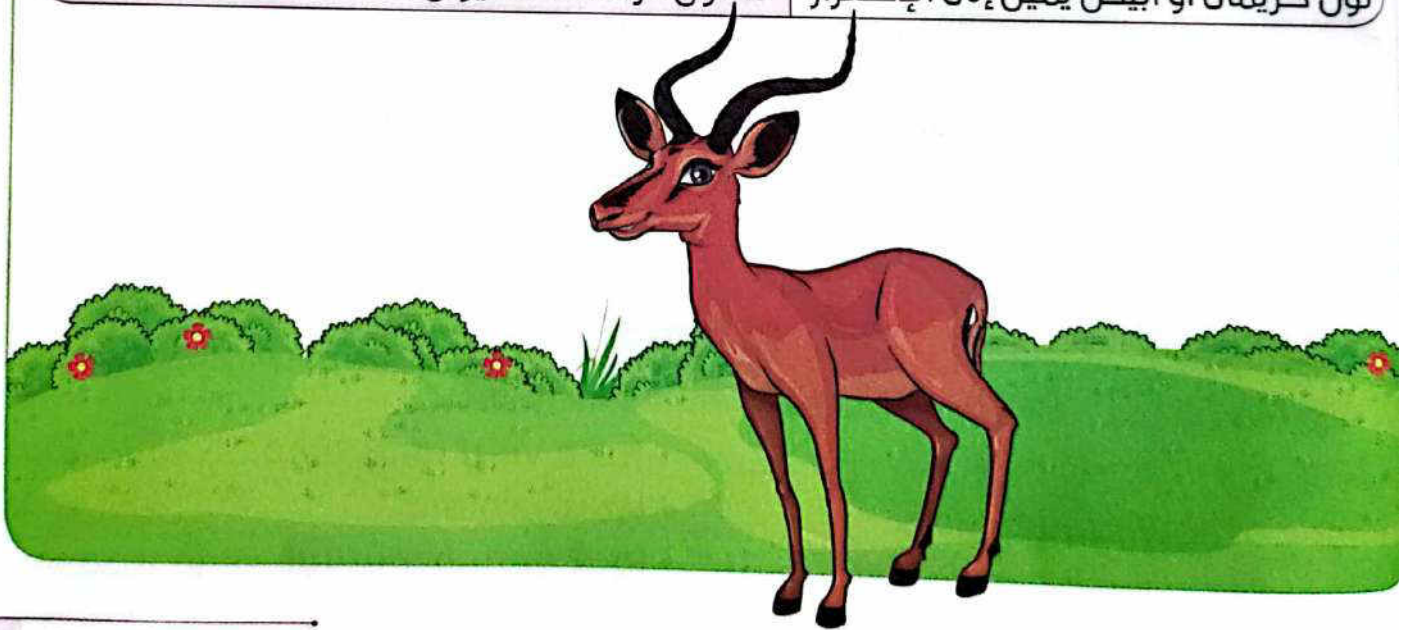
Animal fact file

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

Rhim gazelle

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They have hooves on their feet. These hooves help them walk on the sand. Like camels, they don't need to drink a lot of water.

How long is a rhim gazelle's horn ? كم طول قرن غزال الريم ؟	20 – 30 cm	من ٢٠ - ٣٠ سم
How heavy is a rhim gazelle ? كم وزن غزال الريم ؟	20 – 30 kg	من ٢٠ - ٣٠ كجم
How long does it live ? كم المدة التي يعيشها ؟	about 14 years	حوالي ١٤ عامًا
What color is its coat ? ما لون فراء هذا الحيوان ؟	cream or yellow-white	لون كريمي أو أبيض يميل إلى الأصفرار



Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and learn about rhim gazelles.

اعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويتعلم عن غزال الريم.

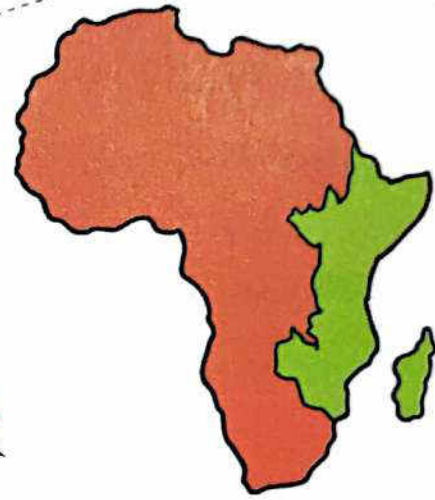
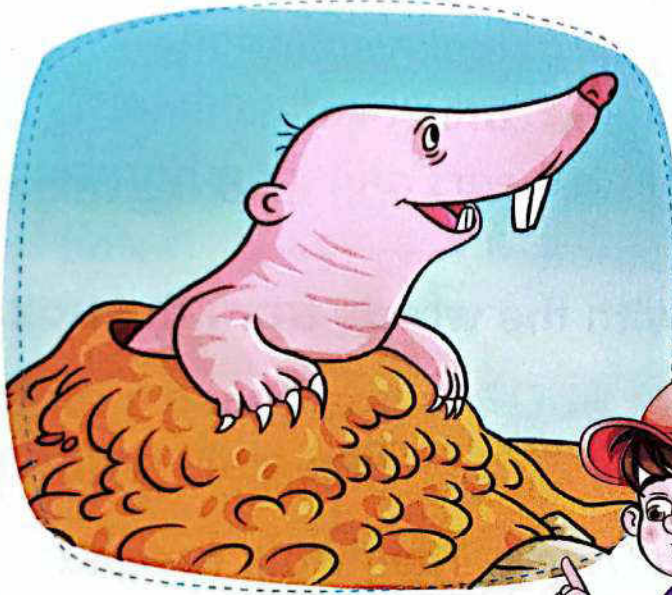
غزال الريم يبدو جميل جدًا. إنهم يعيشون في الصحراء الكبرى، ويتجولون بحثًا عن العشب وأوراق الشجر والنباتات لياكلوها. لديهم آذان كبيرة وقرون طويلة. لديهم فراء أبيض يميل إلى الأصفرار يحميهم من أشعة الشمس. لديهم حوافر في أقدامهم. هذه الحوافر تساعد في المشي على الرمال. وهي مثل الجمال. لا تحتاج إلى شرب الكثير من المياه.

Naked Mole Rat

The naked mole rat lives in eastern Africa. It has big teeth and no hair. It can't control its body temperature because it has no hair. But there are two things that make the mole rat special :

1. It doesn't get ill.
2. It lives for a very long time (31 years).

Scientists want to learn all about mole rats. They're not cute animals, but they are amazing!



Eastern Africa



Help your child look, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

يعيش فأر الخلد العاري في شرق إفريقيا. له أسنان كبيرة وليس لديه شعر. لا يستطيع التحكم في حرارة جسمه لأنه ليس لديه شعر. ولكن هناك شيئا يجعل فأر الخلد مميزاً : ١- لا يمرض. ٢- يعيش لفترة طويلة جداً (٣١ عام). يريد العلماء معرفة كل شيء عن فئران الخلد. هي ليست حيوانات ظريفة ولكنها رائعة !

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Rhim gazelles live near the sea.
2. Rhim gazelles have dark-colored coats.
3. Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. Rhim gazelles look •
 2. The naked mole rat doesn't •
 3. Rhim gazelles have big •
 4. Scientists want to learn •
 5. Naked mole rats •

- B**
- ☐ a. get ill.
 - ☐ b. very beautiful.
 - ☐ c. all about mole rats.
 - ☐ d. look very angry.
 - ☐ e. aren't cute animals.
 - ☐ f. ears and long horns.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

birds – leaves – hooves – horns

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, (1)..... and plants to eat. They have big ears and long (2)..... . They have (3)..... on their feet. These hooves help them walk on the sand.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. plants – leaves – and – Rhim gazelles – eat.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer or (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و(F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
3. Ask your child to read the text and complete the text using the words in the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويكمل مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.
4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل/أسئلة صحيحة.

2. does – Where – live – the naked mole rat ?

3. are – dangerous – Dolphins – not.

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

- Rhim gazelles in the Sahara Desert.
a. live b. see c. listen
- Rhim gazelles have big ears and long
a. hooves b. horns c. humps
- The naked mole rat can't control its body
a. weather b. shape c. temperature
- want to learn all about naked mole rats.
a. Scientists b. Doctors c. Engineers
- Rhim gazelles' help them walk on the sand.
a. paws b. horns c. hooves

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Rhim gazelles

Guiding words :

- beautiful
- Sahara Desert
- sand
- live



5. Ask your child to choose the correct word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من 4 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى مستخدماً الكلمات المساعدة.



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

غير بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ واكتب المعنى.

- A. spider
bear
wing
fur
pelican

- B.
.....
.....
.....
.....

تمساح
نسر
قرون الحيوان
جمل
غزال الريم

My Reading

2 Read and underline. اقرأ وضع خط.

Camels are beautiful, (weak – strong) animals. They help us to carry things and to cross the (desert – forest). Their milk is (delicious – bad). We can use their (hair – fur) to make clothes !

My Language

3 Read and choose the correct answer. اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

- The blue car is than the red car.
a. old b. older c. as old
- Elephants are bigger cow.
a. than b. as c. like
- Driving is dangerous than walking.
a. less b. more c. as
- Children are than adult
a. young
b. younger
c. youngest

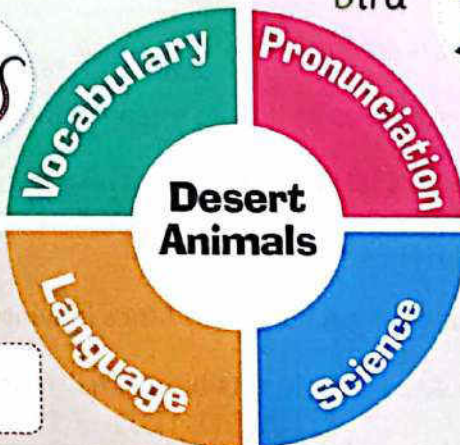
My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence. what does the fennec fox eat

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 2



Comparative adjectives

Horses are faster than camels.




A mouse is smaller than an elephant.



A snake is more dangerous than a fox.



- What does the fennec fox eat ?
- It eats insects, small lizards and mice. 
- Why does the fennec fox have big ears ?
- To help it hear small animals and insects.

1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Animals in Egypt	crocodile	The crocodiles are huge and scary. They're dangerous.
	spider	The spiders are very helpful.
	pelican – fish	The pelican eats small fish.
	animals - control	Animals do a very important job. They control the number of small animals.
Fennec fox	desert	The fennec fox lives in the desert.
	eat	The fennec fox eats insects, small lizards and mice.
	ears	Its ears are big.
	heat – lose	The fox loses heat from its ears during the day.
	fur – warm	The fox's thick fur keeps it warm at night.
Steppe eagle	beautiful	The steppe eagle is beautiful.
	travel – winter	It travels from Europe to Africa in winter.
	eagle - eat	The steppe eagle eats birds, small mammals and rabbits.
	female – male	The female is bigger and heavier than the male.
Camels	camels - amazing	Camels are amazing. They're beautiful and strong.
	carry – desert	They carry things and people to cross the desert.
	milk	Their milk is delicious.
	fur – clothes	We can use their fur to make clothes.
	flat feet	They have large, flat feet so they can walk on the sand.
	water	They can live without water for a long time.
	noisy – angry	They are very noisy and they can get angry.
Horses	eyes	Horses have large, beautiful eyes.
	teeth	They have strong teeth.
	eat – drink	They eat grass. They drink fresh water.

2. How to make a sentence :

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

1. The fennec fox – in – the desert – lives.
2. eats – fish – small – The pelican.

١ الجمل الخبرية

فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1		
2		

1. at – the – eagle – Look – flying.
2. at – bear – the – look – Don't.

٢ الجمل الأمرية

Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1	Look	
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. are – animals – Which – dangerous ?
2. the bear – angry – does – look – Why ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. crocodiles – like – he – Does ?
2. really – pelican – scared – Is – the ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1			
2			

Desert Animals

Animal

- This is a / an
camel / crocodile / eagle,
fennec fox / pelican / snake /
spider.

Compare

1. It is bigger / faster /
heavier than
2. It is more (dangerous) than

It has

1. It has wings / a beak /
feather / fur.
2. It has four legs / no legs.
3. It has hooves / horns.

It eats

- It eats grass / meat /
insects ... etc.

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

spider – insects – farmers – helpful

This is a spider. It has eight legs. Spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Farmers like spiders. Spiders are smaller than rats.



Your turn دورك

crocodile – dangerous – eat – control

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



١- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 The fennec fox

The fennec fox lives in the deserts of North Africa⁽¹⁾. It's smaller than other foxes⁽²⁾. It has big ears⁽³⁾. It needs big ears to hear insects⁽⁴⁾. It eats insects, small lizards and mice⁽⁵⁾. It weighs about 1 kilogram⁽⁶⁾.

2 Camels

Camels are amazing⁽⁷⁾. They live in the desert⁽⁸⁾. They are perfect for the desert⁽⁹⁾. They are strong animals⁽¹⁰⁾. They can live a long time without water⁽¹¹⁾. They have large, flat feet to help them walk on the sand⁽¹²⁾.

3 Rhinoceroses

Rhinoceroses look very beautiful⁽¹³⁾. They live in the Sahara Desert⁽¹⁴⁾. They have big ears⁽¹⁵⁾. They have long horns⁽¹⁶⁾. They have yellow-white coats to protect them from the sun⁽¹⁷⁾. They don't need to drink a lot of water⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 Different animals

There are different animals that live in our country⁽¹⁹⁾. Spiders are helpful⁽²⁰⁾. Spiders and snakes eat insects⁽²¹⁾. Farmers like spiders⁽²²⁾. Crocodiles are huge and scary, but they do a very important job⁽²³⁾. They control the number of small animals⁽²⁴⁾.

General Exercises

on Unit 2

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

• 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects. ☐
2. The fennec fox lives in the forest. ☐
3. It loses heat from its mouth. ☐

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

• 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

fur - desert - live - carry

Camels are amazing. They help us to (1) things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their (2) to make clothes! Camels are perfect for the (3)

• 3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The crocodile is •
2. The female steppe eagle •
3. Camels have large, •
4. The steppe eagle travels from •
5. The snake lifts •

B

- ☐ a. is bigger than the male.
- ☐ b. flat feet.
- ☐ c. for a long time.
- ☐ d. Europe to Africa in winter
- ☐ e. its head up when it sees something.
- ☐ f. huge and scary.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the correct answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words from the box.

3. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

- 1. Is the new hotel than the old one ?
a. nice b. nicer c. more nice d. most nice
- 2. The bear is bigger the pelican.
a. the b. then c. there d. than
- 3. Horses like to drink water.
a. sweet b. dirty c. fresh d. salt
- 4. We use the of camels to make clothes.
a. meat b. milk c. fur d. plants
- 5. A camel is than a horse.
a. heavy b. heavier c. as heavy d. more heavy

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They have hooves on their feet that help them walk on the sand. They don't need to drink a lot of water like camels.

A. Choose the correct answer.

- 1. Rhim gazelles have horns.
a. short b. long c. small d. big
- 2. Rhim gazelles eat
a. meat b. leaves c. small animals d. insects
- 3. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a. coats b. horns c. rhim gazelles d. hooves

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What color is rhim gazelles' coat ?

.....

5. Where do rhim gazelles live ?

.....

- 4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.
- 5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له.

• **6** Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – flying – The pelican – away – the fish – with.

2. keeps it – fur – thick – warm – The fox's.

3. are – helpful – Spiders – very.

4. horse – How – is – tall – a ?

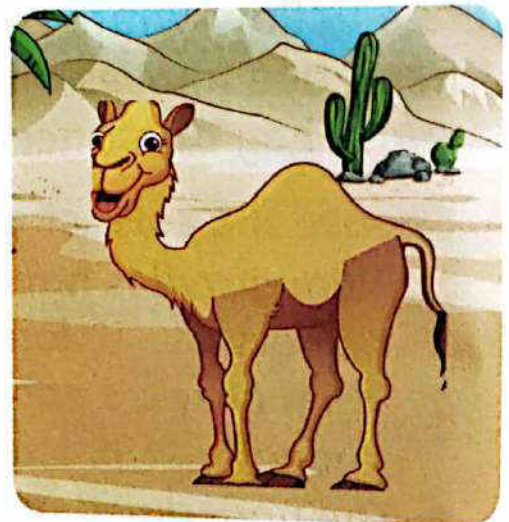
• **7** Write a paragraph of about (4 – 6) sentences using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Camels

Guiding words :

- flat feet
- fur
- desert
- carry things
- clothes
- without water



• **8** Punctuate the following sentence.

the bear is stronger than the pelican

Notes for parents

6. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

7. Ask your child to write a paragraph of four – six sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

8. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. An elephant is than a bird. It's about 2000 kg.
a. bigger b. big c. biggest (بنى سويف - الواسطى ٢٠٢٢)
2. Crocodiles are dangerous than fish. They have sharp teeth.
a. most b. the c. more (المنيا - مغاغة ٢٠٢٢)
3. Some birds have long They use them to eat.
a. pens b. beaks c. peas (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٢)

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. (نموذج وزارة ٢٠٢٢) •
2. A crocodile is dangerous. (الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٢) •
3. The steppe eagle has large wings. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢) •

B

- ☐ a. It's huge and scary.
- ☐ b. It lives in big open areas.
- ☐ c. They have big ears and long horns.
- ☐ d. every morning.

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list.

dangerous – animals – camel – big

My family likes to visit the zoo. Last Friday, we visited Giza Zoo. We saw different (1)..... . Some animals are (2)..... like snakes. Some animals help us like the (3)..... . It is strong. (الجيزة - منشأة القناطر ٢٠٢٢)

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a, b or c.
 2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
 3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the given box.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات التي في المربع المعطاة له.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

(الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)

1. ears – has – The – fox – big – fennec.

2. dangerous – Crocodiles – animals – are.

(الدقهلية – المطرية ٢٠٢٢)

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are very helpful. They carry things and people in the desert. They can live without water for a long time. Horses are helpful, too. They are very fast and they can carry heavy things, too. Horses can live up to thirty years while camels can live up to forty years. Horses and camels are good for the desert.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

True

False

1. Camels are perfect for the desert.
2. Camels can live without water for a short time.
3. Camels live longer than horses.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

B. Read and answer the following questions :

4. How long can horses live ?

5. What can camels carry in the desert ?

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

does a fennec fox live in egypt

(القليوبية – بنها ٢٠٢٢)

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences.

5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the given questions.

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

طلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة.
طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له.
طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose.

1. The steppe eagle eats other (birds – dogs – fish)
2. The female is bigger and than the male.
(taller – longer – heavier)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

insects – eat – hear

Sarah : What does the fennec fox (1) ?

Huda : It eats (2) , small lizards and mice.

Sarah : Why does the fennec fox have big ears ?

Huda : To (3) small animals and insects.

C. The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Adel gives the crocodile some medicine to sleep.
2. Fayez feeds the baby goats with a bottle of milk.

T F

☐ ☐

☐ ☐

D. Vocabulary and structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. I think dogs are than birds.
a. nice b. nicer c. nicest
2. Rhim gazelles have long
a. horns b. ears c. hooves

Why are plants green ?

لماذا النباتات خضراء ؟



• Skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

الإتقان
الوحدة

Aims of unit three :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about plants and how they help us.
- استمع، اقرأ، ابحث واكتب عن النباتات وكيف تساعدنا.
- practice making sentences with the superlative.
- ادرّب على تكوين جمل باستخدام صيغة صفات التفضيل.
- read, listen to, and understand a short story.
- اقرأ، استمع إلى وافهم قصة قصيرة.

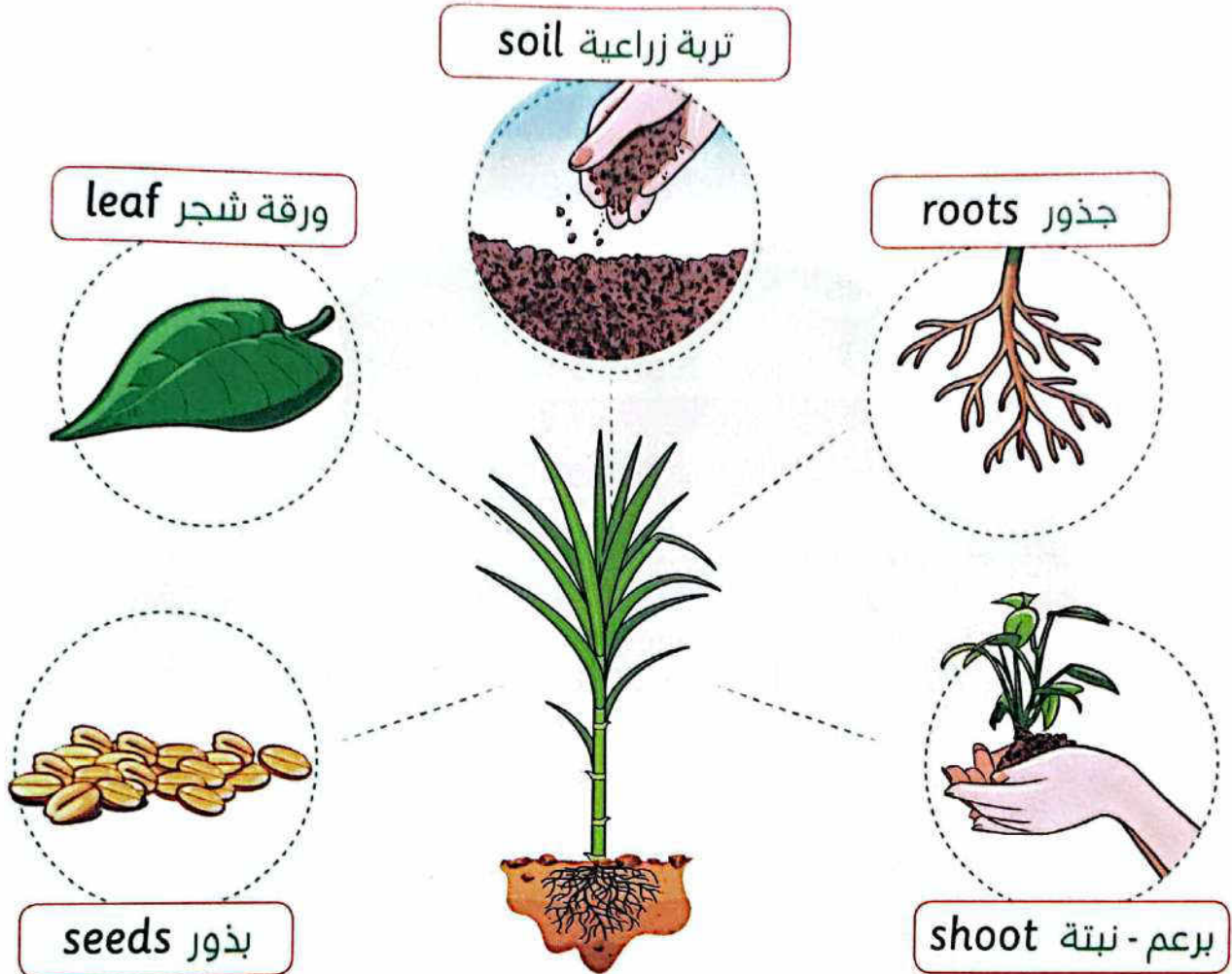
الاهداف العامة للوحدة الثالثة :

- learn about and say words with the consonant blends /sl/ and /sw/.
تعلم واقول كلمات بحروف ساكنة مدمجة /sl/ و /sw/.
- write the life stages of a sunflower.
اكتب عن مراحل حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.
- research and write a report.
اكتب واكتب تقرير.



Key Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



The germination process

عملية الإنبات

Extra vocabulary

plants	نباتات	tomato fruits	ثمار الطماطم
balcony	بلكونة (شرفة)	flower	زهرة
leaves	أوراق شجر	inside	داخل

• Help your child to listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

تجمع كلمة leaf بحذف حرف ال (f) ووضع (ves). leaf → leaves

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

water	يسقي
die	يموت
look	ينظر
plant	يزرع

Past

watered
died
looked
planted

Irregular

Present

grow	ينمو/يزرع
find	يجد
become	يصبح
take	يأخذ

Past

grew
found
became
took

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- That's awesome! هذا مذهش!
- Let's have it for lunch!

- That's called

ذلك يسمى

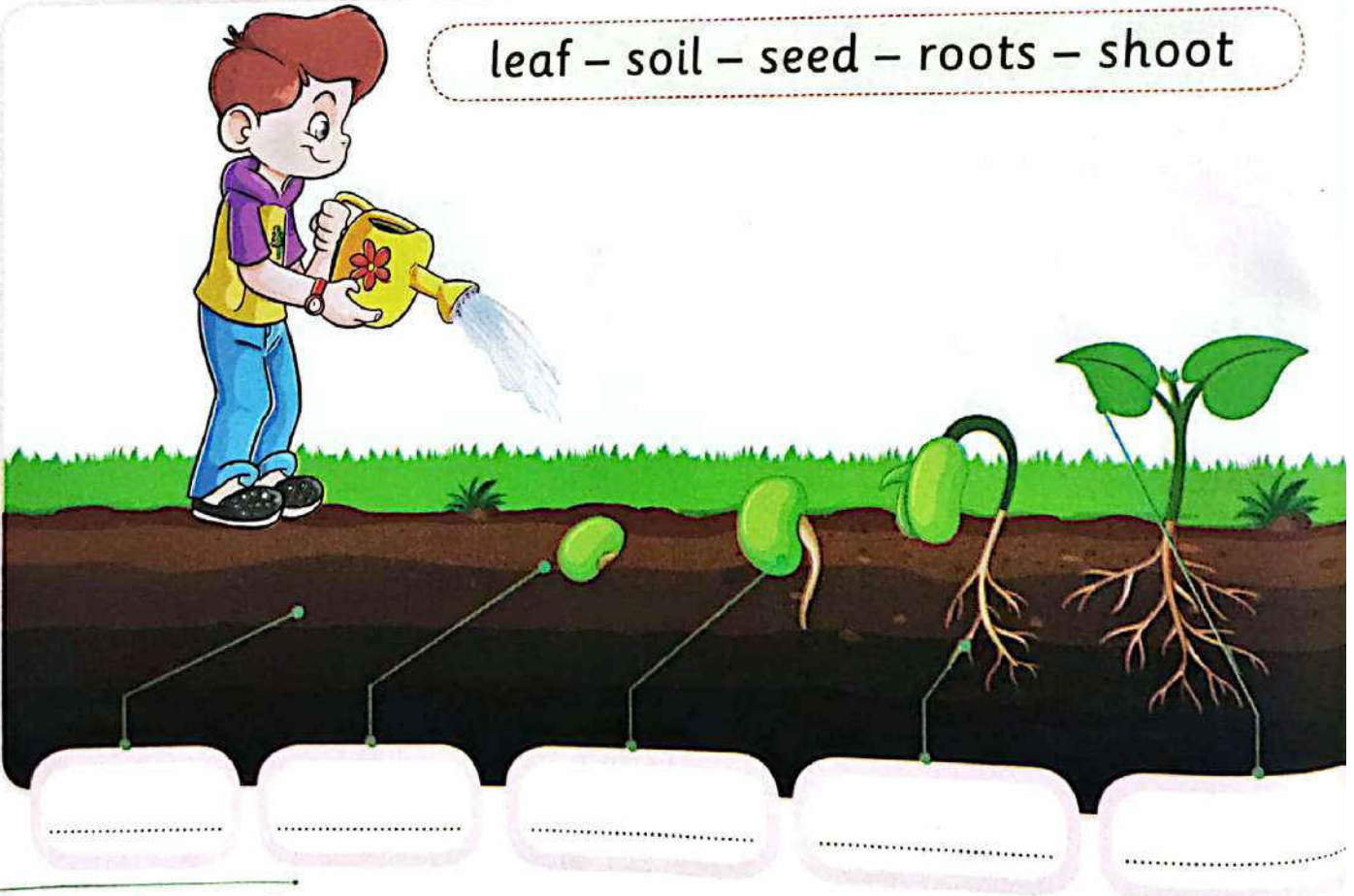
هيا تناولوها على وجبة الغداء!



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look, read and write.

leaf – soil – seed – roots – shoot



Notes for parents

- Ask you child to look, read and write each word in its correct place.

اللب من طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ويكتب كل كلمة في مكانها الصحيح.



Listening and Reading

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Come and look! تعال وانظر !

flowers

leaves



What is it, Dad ?
ما هذا، يا أبى ؟



Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony! Look, can you see the leaves and the flowers ?

نباتات الطماطم لدينا تنمو فى الشرفة !
انظر، هل تستطيع أن ترى أوراق الشجر والزهور ؟



Oh yes, but why are the tomatoes green ?

أوه أجل، لكن لماذا الطماطم خضراء اللون ؟

Tomatoes are green before they are red.

الطماطم تكون خضراء اللون قبل أن تصبح حمراء اللون.



How do we grow new tomatoes ? كيف نزرع طماطم جديدة ؟

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

تحتوى الطماطم على بذور فى الداخل. نستطيع أخذ البذور وزرع طماطم جديدة ! نزرع البذرة وينمو النبات. وهذا ما يسمى بعملية الانبات. نحن نسقى النبات كل يوم وتنمو الجذور تحت التربة الزراعية. ينمو النبات ويتحول لأزهار وتصبح الأزهار ثمار طماطم.



That's awesome! And I found a red tomato! Let's have it for lunch! هذا رائع ! لقد وجدت طماطم حمراء اللون ! هيا نتناولها على الغداء !



- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

- ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.



1 Read and complete.

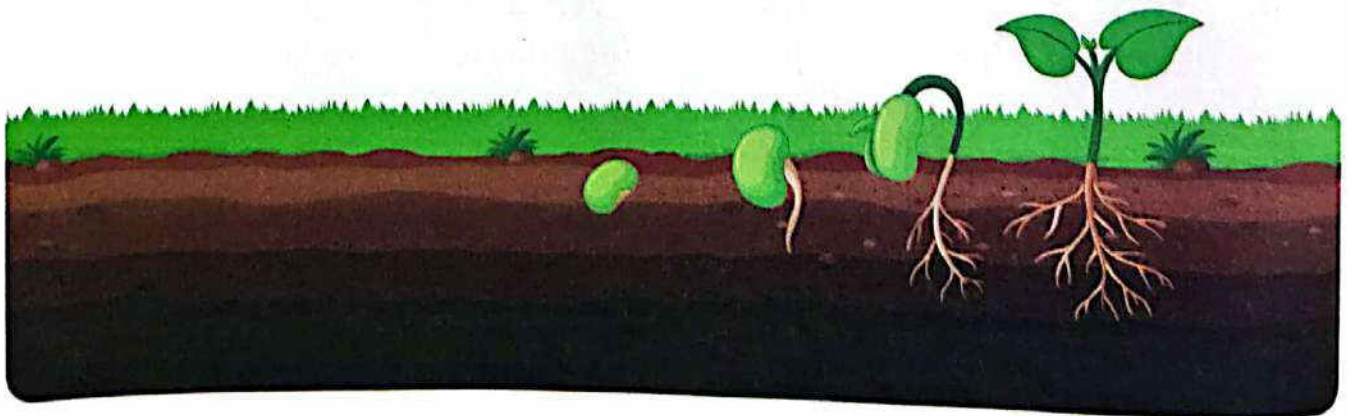
The germination process

roots – flowers – shoot – sunlight

We put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1)..... and water so it can grow. The seed grows (2)..... under the soil. Then it grows a (3)..... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and (4)..... .

2 Look and write the germination process.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to, read and complete the text with words from the box.
2. Ask your child to look at the picture and write the germination process.

نسب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.
نسب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويكتب مراحل عملية الأنبات.
في نضع البذرة في التربة. البذرة تحتاج لضوء الشمس والمياه حتى تستطيع أن تنمو. البذرة تلتج جذور تحت التربة. ثم تنمو النبتة وتصبح أطول فوق التربة. في نهاية، النبات الكامل ينمو كأوراق شجر وأزهار.

Dictation



إلتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
plants نباتات	p _ _ nts	
grow ينمو	gr _ _	
leaves أوراق شجر	l _ _ ves	
germination إنبات	g _ rm _ na _ _ _ n	
awesome رائع	aw _ s _ _ e	
found وجد	f _ _ nd	
leaf ورقة شجرة	l _ _ f	
soil تربة	s _ _ l	
roots جذور	r _ _ ts	
seeds بذور	s _ _ ds	
shoot نبتة - برعم	sh _ _ t	
process عملية	pr _ ce _ _	

• Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Tomatoes don't have seeds inside.
2. We plant a seed and the plant grows.
3. We take the seeds to grow new tomatoes.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

germination - flowers - red - yellow

Our tomato plants are growing on the balcony ! They have leaves and (1) Tomatoes are green before they are (2) We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called (3)

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Tomatoes have •
2. Our tomato plants are •
3. Let's have a red tomato •
4. Tomatoes are green •
5. How do we grow •

B

- ☐ a. growing on the balcony.
- ☐ b. tomatoes ?
- ☐ c. before they are red.
- ☐ d. for lunch.
- ☐ e. seeds inside.
- ☐ f. meat inside.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

3. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. new – tomatoes – How – we – grow – do ?
.....
2. green – Why – tomatoes – are ?
.....
3. have – lunch – for – a red tomato – Let's !
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. Tomatoes are before they are red.
a. blue b. green c. brown
2. We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called
a. transportation b. digestion c. germination
3. The roots grow the soil.
a. above b. under c. on
4. Let's a red tomato for lunch.
a. read b. write c. have
5. Tomatoes have inside.
a. roots b. seeds c. shoots
6. We our plants every day.
a. water b. read c. look
7. are green.
a. Roots b. Leaves c. Flowers

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

can you see the leaves and the flowers
.....

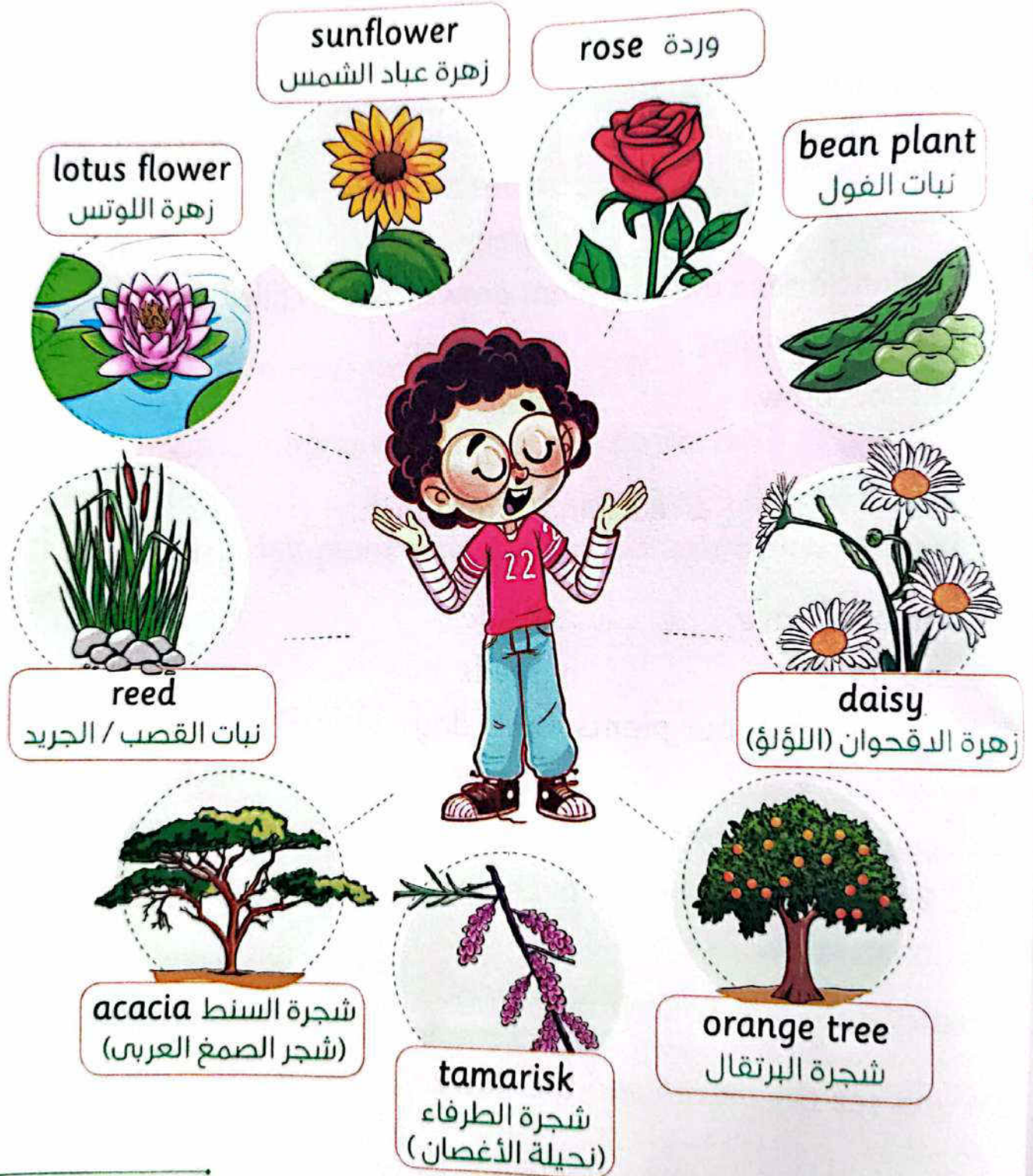
4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.

5. Ask your child to choose the correct word.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.

Key Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردددهم.

Extra vocabulary

habitat	موطن - بيئة	colorful	ملون
agricultural	زراعي	maize	ذرة
desert	صحراء	eggplant	الباذنجان
lake	بحيرة	beetle	خنفساء
river	نهر	butterfly	فراشة
rain	مطر	suitcase	حقيرة سفر



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Look and write the missing letters.

1.



s _ _ flow _ _

2.



b _ _ n pl _ _ t

3.



ac _ ci _

4.



l _ t _ _ fl _ _ er

2 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



r v r e i

2.



t d r e s e

3.



o e r s

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة.
2. Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters then write the words correctly. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويرتب الحروف ثم يكتب الكلمات بشكل صحيح.



Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Plant habitats موطن النبات

1 Agricultural habitat البيئة الزراعية

Farmers work here. They grow food for us to eat.

المزارعون يعملون هنا. يزرعون الطعام لنا لتأكل.



2 Rivers and lakes الأنهار والبحيرات

Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water.

تحتاج النباتات القريبة من الأنهار والبحيرات إلى الكثير من المياه.



3 Desert habitat البيئة الصحراوية

There is not much rain here. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

لا يوجد الكثير من الأمطار هنا. النباتات التي تعيش في الصحراء لا تحتاج الكثير من المياه.



Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. In which habitat do farmers grow food for us to eat ?
- In agricultural habitat.

Practise

2. What do plants near rivers need to grow ?

Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures and read the sentences.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ الجمل.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Where do these plants live ?

Plants نباتات

Habitats مواطن



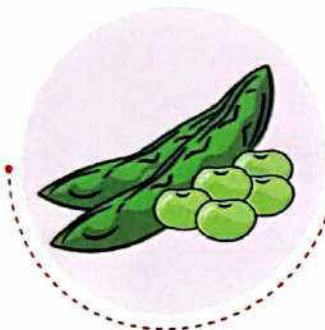
lotus flower



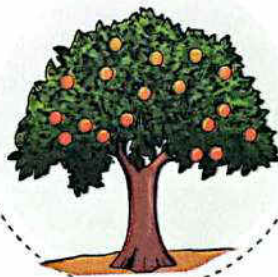
reed



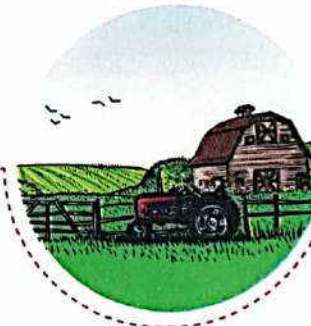
rivers or lakes



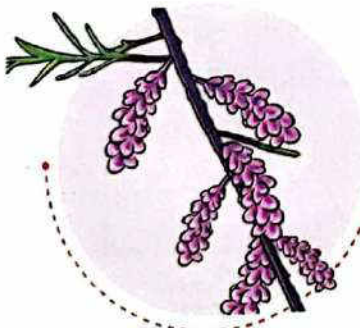
bean plant



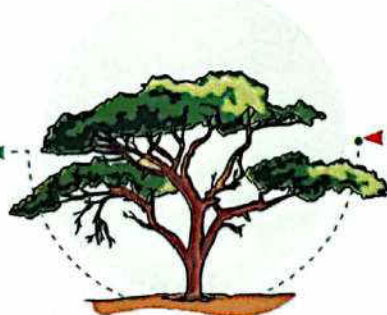
orange tree



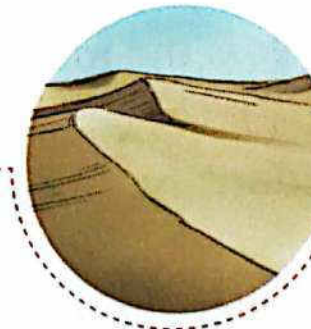
agricultural habitat



tamarisk



acacia






desert habitat

• Help your child read and identify the plants habitats.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على مواطن النباتات.

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

The differences between the flowers

Fact file	daisy 	rose 	sunflower 
How big is the flower ?	2.5 – 5 cm	about 6 cm	7.5 – 15 cm
How tall is it ?	10 cm	60 cm	1 – 3.5 m
How long does it live ?	around 6 days	around 10 days	around 2 weeks
How heavy is it ?	around 20 g	around 50 g	around 200 g



Pop Quiz on Reading

★ Read the fact file and write T (True) or F (False).

- The sunflower is the biggest flower.
- The daisy lives longer than the rose.
- The rose is the heaviest flower.
- The sunflower is the tallest flower.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

- The rose is taller than the daisy. The daisy is more colorful than the rose.

الوردة الحمراء تكون أطول من نبات الأقحوان. نبات الأقحوان ملون أكثر من الوردة.

Notes for parents

• Help your child read the fact file and learn the differences between the flowers.

• Ask your child to read the fact file and write (T) or (F) according to the given sentences.

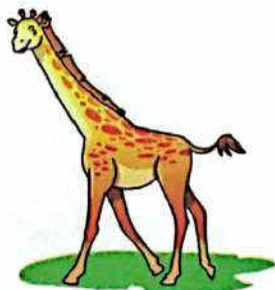
• Help your child read the sentences and identify.

• Superlative adjectives صفات صيغة التفضيل

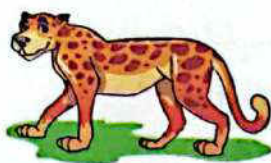
A. Short adjectives : الصفات القصيرة

★ عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (تفضيل واحد على مجموعة فى صفة ذات مقطع واحد)
نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة (est) :

the + صفة + est



The giraffe is the tallest animal.



The cheetah is the fastest animal.



The turtle is the slowest animal.



My cat is the nicest in our street.

B. Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين فى الصفات الطويلة (التي تتكون من أكثر من مقطع) نستخدم

the + most + (long adj.) صفة طويلة



The rose is **the most beautiful** flower.



The lion is **the most dangerous** animal.



أيهما...؟ (للتخيار بين شيئين أو أكثر) **Which...?**



Which one is **the heaviest** ?

أيهما يكون الأثقل وزنًا ؟



The sunflower is **the heaviest**.

زهرة عباد الشمس الأثقل وزنًا.



How big ?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الحجم

- **How big** is the daisy ?

- It is about 6 cm.

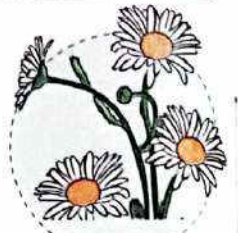


How long ?

تستخدم للسؤال عن الطول الأفقي وطول المدة الزمنية

- **How long** does the sunflower live ?

- It lives around 2 weeks.



Pop Quiz on language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My city is the place to live.

a. nicer

b. nicer than

c. nicest

d. nice

Notes for parents

• Help your child to remember how to make comparative and superlative adjectives.

1. Ask your child to choose the correct word.

ساعد طفلك أن يتذكر كيف يكون صفات المقارنة وصيغة التفضيل.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

2. I think the rose is the flower.
 a. much beautiful b. most beautiful
 c. beautiful d. more beautiful
3. The elephant is fattest animal.
 a. then b. the c. than d. that
4. The sunflower lives the
 a. longer b. long c. longer than d. longest
5. The rose is than the daisy.
 a. taller b. tall c. the tallest d. tallest
6. The daisy lives shorter the rose.
 a. than b. like c. there d. then
7. The lion is the dangerous animal.
 a. more b. much c. most d. many
8. The sunflower is the plant.
 a. tall b. taller than c. tallest d. taller
9. Sharks are sea animals.
 a. more dangerous than b. the most dangerous
 c. dangerous d. as dangerous

② Complete using comparative and superlative adjectives.

adjective	comparative	superlative
beautiful
fast
difficult
small
slow
big
nice

2. Ask your child to complete the table using comparative and superlative adjectives.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل الجدول مستخدماً صفات صيغة المقارنة وصفات صيغة التفضيل.

Dictation



فإن مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell

lotus flower زهرة اللوتس

bean plant نبات الفول

tamarisk شجر الطرفاء

reed نبات القصب/الجريد

acacia شجر السنط أو الصمغ

orange tree شجرة برتقال

sunflower زهرة عباد الشمس

rose وردة حمراء

daisy نبات الأقحوان

agricultural زراعي

colorful ملون

Complete

lot _ s fl _ _ er

b _ _ n pl _ n _

t _ m _ ri _ k

r _ _ d

ac _ c _ a

or _ ng _ tr _ _

s _ _ fl _ _ er

r _ s _

d _ _ sy

agri _ ult _ r _ l

c _ l _ rf _ l

Write

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

- Ola lives in a city.
- Plants near the river don't need a lot of water.
- Farmers grow food for us to eat.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read the passage and answer the questions.

In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat like bean plants and orange trees. Plants near the rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed, need a lot of water. Plants that live in the desert don't need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert, so we can find acacia plant and tamarisk there.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Bean plants are in the agricultural habitat.
- There is much rain in the desert.
- Plants near the river need a lot of water.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

- What do farmers grow in the agricultural habitat ?
.....
- What plants can we find in the desert ?
.....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- farmers - sunflowers - do - Why - grow ?
.....

- suitcase - heaviest - I - the - have.
.....

- to - We - grow - eat - plants - bean.
.....

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

2. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The sunflower is flower.
a. heavier b. the heaviest c. more heavy d. heavy
2. The lion is dangerous than the cat.
a. the most b. much c. more d. as
3. A snake is scarier a fox.
a. the b. then c. that d. than
4. A lotus flower grows near the It needs a lot of water.
a. desert b. rocks c. river d. mountains
5. What is the animal in the world ?
a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. as big

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. Plants near rivers •
2. How tall is it ? •
3. There is not much rain •
4. Farmers work in •
5. The rose is taller •

(B)

- ☐ a. It is 10 cm.
- ☐ b. agricultural habitat.
- ☐ c. in the desert habitat.
- ☐ d. than the daisy.
- ☐ e. need a lot of water.
- ☐ f. don't need a lot of water.

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the following guiding elements.

يجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Desert habitat"

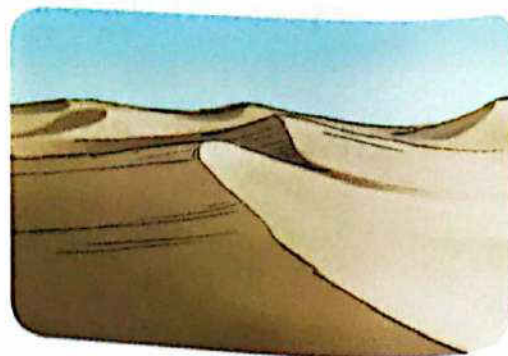
Guiding words :

not much rain - plants - don't need - live

.....

.....

.....



Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

طلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
طلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى له مستخدماً الكلمات المساعدة.

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

chloroplasts	البلاستيدات الخضراء	stick	يلصق
microscope	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	float	يطفو
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون	polluted	ملوث
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	air	هواء

تنويه ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

light	خفيف	cool	مائل للبرودة
cell	خلية	Milan	مدينة ميلان (في إيطاليا)
wind	رياح	dirty	متسخ
gas	غاز	building	مبنى
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	apartment	شقة
cleaner	أكثر نظافة		

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- make new seeds
- travel away from
- make the plant green
- with a microscope
- on apartment buildings
- keep the buildings cool
- breathe cleaner air
- travel by air
- travel on animals
- travel by water

- يصنع بذور جديدة
- تنتقل بعيدًا عن
- يجعل النبات أخضر
- باستخدام المجهر
- على المباني السكنية
- يحافظ على برودة المباني
- يتنفس هواء أكثر نظافة
- ينتقل عن طريق الهواء
- ينتقل عن طريق الحيوانات
- ينتقل عن طريق الماء

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

A plant produces **pollen**⁽¹⁾ in a flower. It uses pollen to make new **seeds**⁽²⁾. The seeds travel away from the plant. The seeds need a new place to grow.



ينتج النبات حبوب اللقاح في الزهرة. يستخدم النبات حبوب اللقاح لصنع بذور جديدة. تنتقل البذور بعيداً عن النبات. تحتاج البذور إلى مكان جديد لتنمو.

How do seeds move to new places ?

كيف تنتقل البذور لأماكن جديدة ؟

1

Travel by air

تنتقل عن طريق الهواء

Some seeds can **move**⁽³⁾ in the **wind**⁽⁴⁾. These seeds are very **light**⁽⁵⁾.

يمكن لبعض البذور أن تتحرك في مهب الريح. هذه البذور خفيفة جداً.



2

Travel on animals

تنتقل عن طريق الحيوانات

Some seeds can **stick**⁽⁶⁾ to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them.

يمكن أن تلتصق بعض البذور بفراء الحيوانات. الحيوانات تتحرك وتأخذ البذور معها.



3

Travel by water

تنتقل عن طريق الماء

Other seeds can **float**⁽⁷⁾ on water to find a new **place**⁽⁸⁾ to grow. These seeds are usually big and light.

يمكن أن تطفو البذور الأخرى على الماء لتجد مكاناً جديداً لها لتنمو. عادة ما تكون هذه البذور كبيرة وخفيفة.



Check Vocabulary

(1) حبوب اللقاح	(2) بذور	(3) تنتقل	(4) رياح
(5) خفيفة	(6) تلتصق	(7) تطفو	(8) مكان

Notes for parents

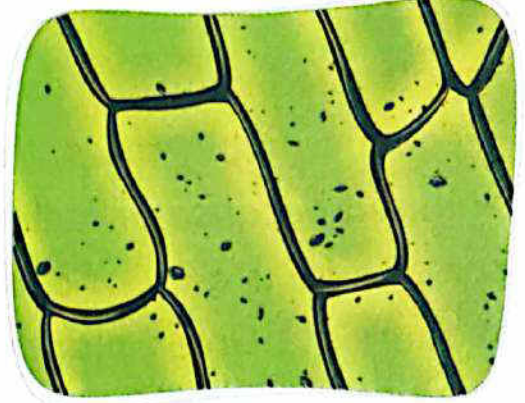
- Help your child read and identify how seeds move to new places.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على كيفية انتقال البذور لأماكن جديدة.

★ Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Is a plant cell big or small ?

A **plant**⁽¹⁾ is made of millions of **cells**⁽²⁾.
The plant cells are very, very small.
Chloroplasts⁽³⁾ make the plant green.
You can only see them with
a **microscope**⁽⁴⁾. The green plant cells
make food for the plant. They use
sunlight⁽⁵⁾, **carbon dioxide**⁽⁶⁾ and water.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) نبات
- (2) خلايا
- (3) البلاستيدات الخضراء
- (4) مجهر (ميكروسكوب)
- (5) ضوء الشمس
- (6) غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون

يتكون النبات من ملايين الخلايا. الخلايا النباتية صغيرة جدًا.
البلاستيدات الخضراء تجعل النبات أخضر. تستطيع رؤيتهم بالمجهر
فقط. تصنع الخلايا النباتية الغذاء للنبات. يستخدمون ضوء
الشمس، ثاني أكسيد الكربون والماء.

★ Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

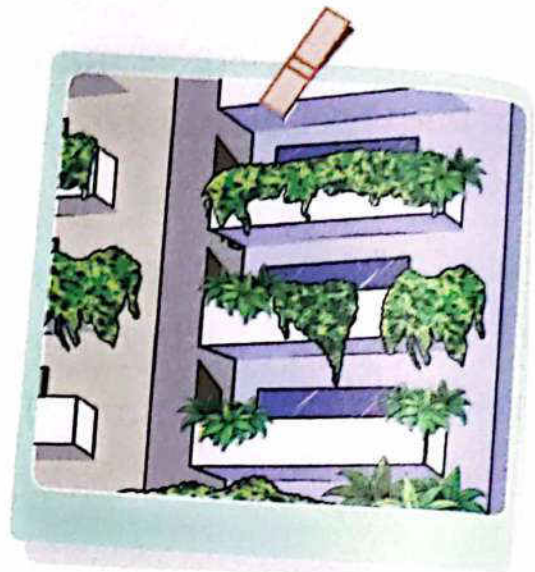
الكلمة Word	التعريف Definition
ملوث polluted	dirty from factories and cars متسخ (ملوث) من المصانع والسيارات
غاز الأكسجين oxygen	a gas in the air that people need to breathe غاز في الهواء يحتاجه الناس للتنفس
غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون carbon dioxide	a gas in the air that green plants use to make their food غاز في الهواء تستخدمه النباتات الخضراء لصنع غذائها

- Help your child to look at the picture and read the text.
- Help your child read and identify the definition of each word.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة ويقرأ النص.
- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على تعريف كل كلمة.

How plants clean air كيف تنقى النباتات الهواء

People need oxygen⁽¹⁾ so we can breathe⁽²⁾. In big cities, the air is polluted because of factories⁽³⁾ and cars. There is a lot of carbon dioxide in the air⁽⁴⁾. Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plant cells need carbon dioxide to make food for the plant. The plants also produce⁽⁵⁾ oxygen. Plants in our houses and parks give us oxygen to breathe.



In some cities, like Paris and Milan, people are growing plants on apartment buildings⁽⁶⁾. These plants keep the buildings cool and help with air pollution⁽⁷⁾. The people who live in the buildings can breathe cleaner air.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) غاز الأكسجين
- (2) يتنفس
- (3) مصانع
- (4) هواء
- (5) ينتج
- (6) شقة سكنية
- (7) تلوث الهواء

يحتاج الناس الأكسجين حتى يتمكنوا من التنفس. في المدن الكبيرة، الهواء ملوث بسبب المصانع والسيارات. هناك الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الهواء. تمتص النباتات الخضراء ثاني أكسيد الكربون من الهواء. خلايا النبات تحتاج ثاني أكسيد الكربون لصنع الغذاء للنبات. النباتات تنتج الأكسجين أيضًا. النباتات في منازلنا وحدائقنا تعطينا الأكسجين للتنفس. في بعض المدن مثل باريس وميلانو، يزرع الناس النباتات في المباني السكنية. هذه النباتات تحافظ على اعتدال درجة حرارة المباني وتساعد في حل مشكلة تلوث الهواء. الناس الذين يعيشون في تلك المباني يستطيعون تنفس هواء أكثر نظافة.

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Why do people need oxygen ?

- They need it to breathe.

Practise

2. Why do people grow plants on apartment buildings ?

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the text.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. A plant uses pollen to make new roots.
2. A plant produces pollen in a flower.
3. The seeds need a new place to grow.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. A plant produces
2. A plant is made of
3. Chloroplasts
4. We need oxygen
5. How do seeds move

B

- ☐ a. millions of cells.
- ☐ b. make the plant green.
- ☐ c. to new places ?
- ☐ d. in our bodies.
- ☐ e. make flapjacks.
- ☐ f. oxygen.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. Some seeds can to an animal's fur.
a. stick b. float c. move
2. Some seeds can on water.
a. stick b. float c. move
3. We need to breathe.
a. carbon dioxide b. oxygen c. water
4. The air in big cities is because of factories and cars.
a. fresh b. polluted c. clean

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

3. Ask your child to choose the correct word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

5. is a gas in the air that green plants use to make their food.
 - a. Oxygen
 - b. Carbon dioxide
 - c. Cell
6. We use the to make things bigger.
 - a. plant cell
 - b. microscope
 - c. pen
7. Some seeds can in the wind.
 - a. move
 - b. stick
 - c. have
8. A plant is made of millions of
 - a. roots
 - b. roads
 - c. cells

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the – makes – What – green – plant ?
.....
2. a lot of – dioxide – carbon – There is – the air – in.
.....
3. are – light – very – seeds – These.
.....

5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

fresh – polluted – cities – carbon dioxide

People need oxygen, so we can breathe. In big (1), the air is (2) because of factories and cars. There is a lot of (3) in the air. The green plant cells need carbon dioxide to make food.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what does the plant use to make its food

.....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to reorder the words and write them correctly to make correct sentences/questions.

5. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

dry	جاف	million	رقم مليون
billion	رقم مليار	farm	مزرعة

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

liter	لتر	polluted air	هواء ملوث
grandparents	الأجداد	life	حياة
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	land	أرض
difficult	صعب	noise	ضوضاء

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

work يعمل
 decide يقرر
 live يعيش

Past

worked
 decided
 lived

Irregular

Present

buy يشتري
 bring يحضر
 am/is يكون

Past

bought
 brought
 was

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- on the farm
- have a good life
- proud of
- work very hard

في المزرعة
 لديه حياة جيدة
 فخور بـ
 يعمل بجد

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.



ترتيب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

☆ Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

Lucas and his farm

The beginning

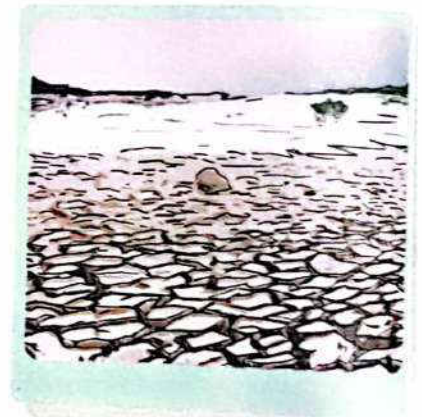
Lucas lives on a farm in the United States. It is a very special **farm**⁽¹⁾. Forty years ago, the **land**⁽²⁾ was very dry. There was no farm. No one wanted to live there.

Lucas's grandparents lived in the **city**⁽³⁾, but they didn't like it. They didn't like the **polluted air**⁽⁴⁾ and the noise. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land.



The middle

At first, life was very difficult. They worked very hard and they planted millions of **seeds**⁽⁵⁾. They used **rainwater**⁽⁶⁾ to water the seeds. They needed about a billion liters of water a year. They grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. They **brought**⁽⁷⁾ animals to the land. They planted trees and flowers.



The end

Today, Lucas lives on the farm with his mom and dad. They are very happy and they have a good life. They are very proud of Lucas's grandparents. They used plants to make the land green.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مزرعة
- (2) أرض
- (3) مدينة
- (4) هواء ملوث
- (5) بذور
- (6) مياه الأمطار
- (7) حضروا / جلبوا

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Where does Lucas live ?

- He lives on a farm in the United States.

Practise

2. How did grandparents water the seeds ?

Notes for parents

- Help your child to listen, look and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، ينظر ويقرأ النص.
يعيش لوكاس في مزرعة في الولايات المتحدة إنها مزرعة مميزة جدًا. قبل أربعين عامًا، كانت الأرض جافة جدًا. لم يكن هناك أي مزرعة. لا أحد كان يريد العيش هناك. عاش أجداد لوكاس في المدينة لكنهم لم يحبهم ذلك. لم يحبوا الهواء الملوث والضجيج. أرادوا أن يمتلكوا مزرعة. فبرروا شراء بعض الأراضي في البداية. كانت الحياة صعبة جدًا. لقد عملوا بجد وزرعوا ملايين البذور. استخدموا مياه الأمطار ليسقوا البذور. كانوا بحاجة إلى حوالي مليار لتر من الماء في السنة. لقد زرعوا الكثير من الفاكهة مثل البرتقال والليمون. جلبوا الحيوانات إلى الأرض. زرعوا الشجار والزهور. اليوم، يعيش لوكاس في المزرعة مع والدته ووالده. هم سعداء ويعيشون حياة جيدة. هم فخرون جدًا بأجداد لوكاس، الذين استخدموا النباتات في جعل الأرض خضراء اللون.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Waleed lives in a city.
2. They use the Nile to water the plants.
3. We grow many fruits.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. live – I – a farm – on.
.....
2. animals – brought – to – They – the land.
.....
3. Lucas – is – Who ?
.....

3 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Adam's grandparents lived in the city, but they didn't like it. They wanted to have a farm. They decided to buy some land. They planted millions of seeds. They used rainwater to water the seeds. They planted trees and flowers. They grew many fruits and brought animals to the land.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Adam's grandparents decided to buy some land.
2. Adam's grandparents lived in the village.
3. They grew many fruits.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did they use to water the seeds ?
.....
5. How did Adam's grandparents bring to the land ?
.....

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer or (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة أو (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل/أسئلة صحيحة.
3. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب على الأسئلة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. They needed about a billion of water a year.
a. liters b. kilos c. bars d. pieces
2. They millions of seeds.
a. planted b. made c. lived d. helped
3. When there is no water in the land, it becomes land.
a. wet b. dry c. good d. fresh
4. There is polluted air and in the city.
a. calmness b. noise c. quietness d. silence
5. They used rainwater to the seeds.
a. water b. sell c. bring d. make
6. He lives a farm.
a. for b. of c. on d. next
7. Forty years ago, the land dry.
a. is b. was c. does d. has

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the following guiding elements

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Life on the farm

Guiding words :

- plant
- land green
- bring animals
- rainwater



6 Punctuate the following sentence.

i live on a farm

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.
5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of four sentences using the given guiding elements.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

A Billion

Learn

A billion is a thousand million.

رقم مليار هو ألف مليون

1,000,000,000

★ Look and identify. انظر وتعرف.

The place-value chart

The place-value chart can help you to understand the value and the place value of each digit in a number.
مخطط القيمة المكانية يساعدك على فهم القيمة العددية والمكانية لكل رقم في العدد.



billions	millions			thousands			units		
billions	hundred millions	ten millions	millions	hundred thousands	ten thousands	thousands	hundreds	tens	ones
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Word form : one billion (1,000,000,000)

• Help your child look and identify a billion number.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويتعرف على رقم بليون.

☆ Identify. تعرف.

1	one
10	ten
100	a hundred
1,000	a thousand
10,000	ten thousand
100,000	a hundred thousand
1,000,000	a million
10,000,000	ten million
100,000,000	a hundred million
1,000,000,000	a billion



احرص على اقتناء

 EL-MONASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للف الرابع الابتدائي

مراجعة نهائية

اسم يعني التفوق



Notes for parents

- Help your child to understand and identify large numbers.

ساعد طفلك أن يفهم ويتعرف على الأرقام الكبيرة.

نصوص
الدستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

نصوص
الدستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

B

- ☐ a. a thousand
- ☐ b. ten thousand
- ☐ c. a billion
- ☐ d. a hundred million
- ☐ e. a hundred thousand

A diagram showing seven red arrows pointing to seven empty rectangular boxes, each containing a dotted line for handwriting practice.

ten millions

millions

ten thousands

hundreds

ones

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل كل رقم بالصيغة الصحيحة له.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب الأرقام العددية للكلمات المعطاة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الجدول ويكمل.



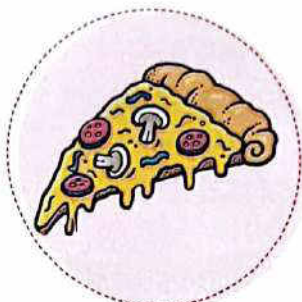
Phonics

☆ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

S + l = sl 🌸 The letters **sl** make the sound /sl/.



sleep
ينام



slice
شريحة



slippers
نعال

S + w = sw 🌸 The letters **sw** make the sound /sw/.



sweep
يكنس



switch
مفتاح كهربائي



sweets
حلوى



swan
بجعة



swim
يسبح

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words that have /sl/ and /sw/ sounds and repeat them.

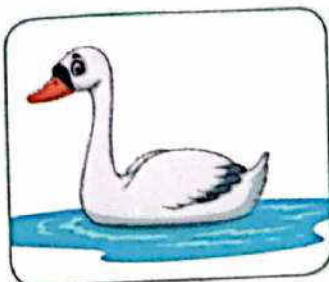
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات /sl/ و /sw/ ويرددهم.



Pop Quiz on Phonics

1 Listen, circle and write.

1.



sw

sl

__ an

2.



sw

sl

__ eep

3.

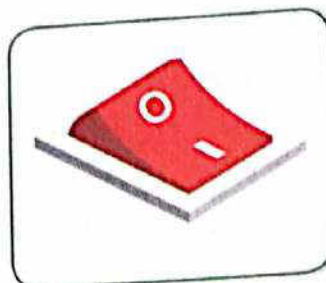


sw

sl

__ ippers

4.



sw

sl

__ itch

2 Read and match.

1. swim

2. slice

3. sweets

4. sweep



1. Ask your child to listen to the words, circle the correct sound and write it.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات، يضع دائرة حول الصوت الصحيح ويكتبه.

2. Ask your child to read each word and match with its correct picture.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ كل كلمة ويوصلها بالصورة الصحيحة لها.

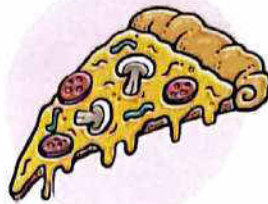
3 Listen and write the missing sound.

1.



__ an

2.



__ ice

3.



__ ippers

4.



__ eets

5.



__ eep

6.



__ eep

4 Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. sweep – sleep – swan – swim
2. slippers – sleep – slices – sweets
3. switches – sweep – sweets – slippers
4. slice - swim - sweep - swan

5 Listen and circle the words that have /sl/ sound in green and that have /sw/ sound in yellow.

swan

slice

sweets

slippers

sleep

switch

swim

sweep

Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to listen to the words and write the missing sound.

4. Ask your child to read and circle the odd sound out.

5. Ask your child to listen and circle the words that have /sl/ sound in green and that have /sw/ sound in yellow.

• The suffix "-ful".

اللاحقة (ful).

The suffix : is a letter or group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word.

اللاحقة هي إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Learn "-ful" is a suffix means "full of".

(-ful) هي لاحقة تعنى "مليئة بـ".

Adjectives end by the suffix-ful

Base word		Adjective	
care	رعاية / يعتنى	careful	حذر / حريص
help	يساعد / مساعدة	helpful	مساعد / متعاون
color	يلون / لون	colorful	زاهى الألوان
use	يستخدم / استخدام	useful	مفيد
beauty	جمال	beautiful	ذات جمال / جميل

He's a careful driver.
هو سائق حذر.



Notice : The letter "y" changes to "i" in the word "beautiful".
لاحظ أن الحرف "y" يتغير إلى "i" في كلمة "beautiful".

• Help your child identify the meaning of the suffix.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معنى اللاحقة.



Pop Quiz on language

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Ali is He drives his car carefully.

- a. carefully b. careful c. careless d. care

2. Someone who always helps people is

- a. helpful b. helpless c. helpfully d. help

3. This book is I will read it again.

- a. use b. using c. useful d. usage

4. Salma is like her mother.

- a. beautiful b. beauty c. more beauty d. as beauty

2 Add the suffix (-ful) to make new adjectives and write the new word.

base	+	suffix	=	new word
hope	+	ful	=	hopeful
help	+		=	
thank	+		=	
color	+		=	
use	+		=	

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to choose the correct word.
2. Ask your child to add the suffix "-ful" to the base word and write the new word.

طلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

طلب من طفلك أن يضيف اللاحقة "-ful" إلى الكلمة الأساسية ويكتب الكلمة الجديدة.

Dictation



لإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell	Complete	Write
slice شريحة	sl _ c _	
swan بجعة	s _ a _	
slippers نعال	sl _ pp _ rs	
sweets حلوى	sw _ _ ts	
sweep يكنس الأرضية	sw _ _ p	
switch مفتاح كهربائي	sw _ t _ _	
beautiful جميلة	b _ au _ if _ l	
colorful زاهى اللون	col _ rfu _	
helpful متعاون	h _ l _ ful	
careful حريص	c _ r _ f _ l	
useful مفيد	u _ e _ ul	

• Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

Lessons 5 & 6

► The life stages of a sunflower ► A report about a plant

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

first	أولاً	finally	أخيراً
next	التالي	after that	بعد ذلك
after	بعد	papyrus	نبات البردي

تلاويه
Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

month	شهر	basket	سلة
Ancient Egyptians	المصريين القدماء	oleander	نبات الدفلى
life stages	مراحل الحياة	rafflesia arnoldii	زهرة رافليسيا أرنولدي
sandals	صندل (حذاء صيفي)	red wood	الخشب الاحمر
Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	week	أسبوع

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

face	يواجه
germinate	ينبت
drop	يسقط

Past

faced
germinated
dropped

Irregular

Present

put	يضع
begin	يبدأ

Past

put
began

Important expressions and prepositions

- get taller
- face the sun
- grow quickly
- near the river
- under the soil
- above the soil

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- يطول/يزداد طولاً
- يواجه الشمس
- ينمو بسرعة
- بالقرب من النهر
- أسفل التربة الزراعية
- أعلى التربة الزراعية

Notes for parents

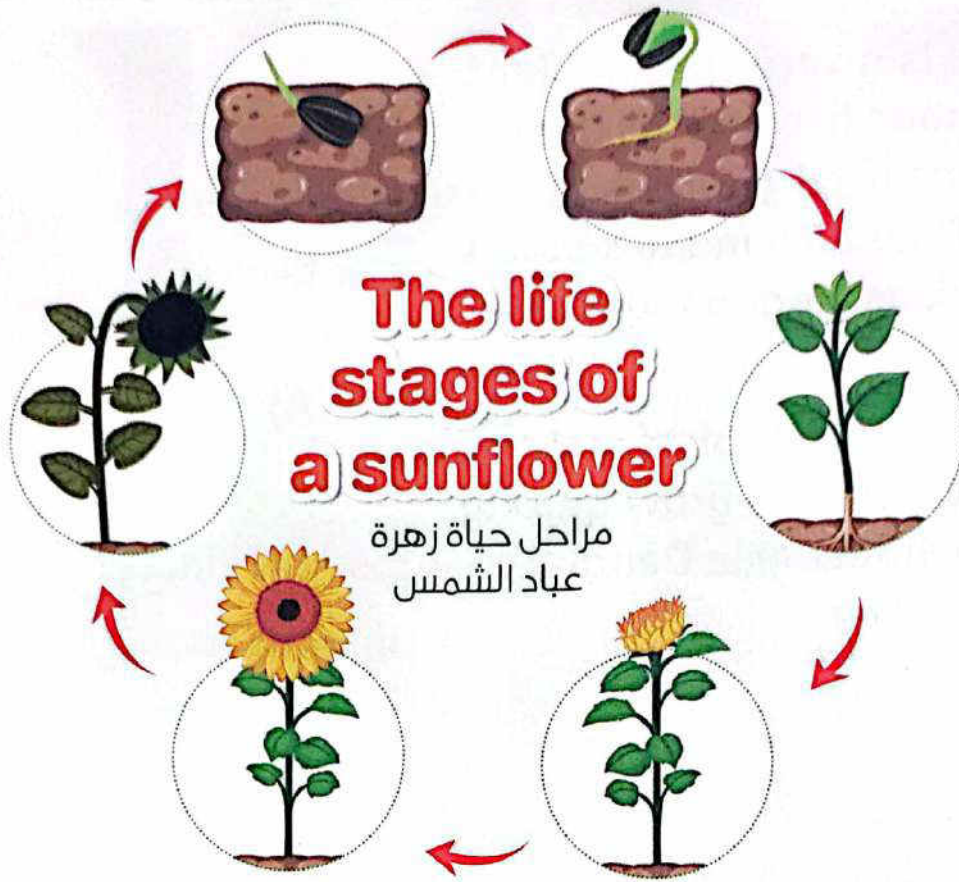
- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• Note : 1. Rafflesia arnoldii is the biggest flower.
2. Oleander is the most dangerous plant.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

نبات رافليسيا أرنولدي هو أكبر زهرة.

★ Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.



1. **First**, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.

- أولاً، تزرع زهرة عباد الشمس في التربة الزراعية. نحن نضعها في أشعة الشمس ونسقيها.

2. **Next**, the seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.

- التالي، تنبت البذور وتبدأ بإنتاج الجذور تحت التربة الزراعية.

3. **After that**, the shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves. It gets taller.

- بعد ذلك، البرعم ينمو أعلى التربة الزراعية. تنتج أوراق الشجر. يصبح أطول.

4. **After** about 4 months, the sunflower opens and faces the sun.

- بعد حوالي 4 أشهر، تتفتح زهرة عباد الشمس وتواجه الشمس.

5. **Finally**, the sunflower dies and drops its seeds. The process begins again.

- في النهاية، تذبل زهرة عباد الشمس وتسقط بذورها. تبدأ العملية مرة أخرى.

• Help your child to look, read and identify the life stages of a sunflower.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ويتعرف على مراحل حياة زهرة عباد الشمس.

★ Look, listen and read.

انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Papyrus

نبات البردي

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus.



Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.



Activity

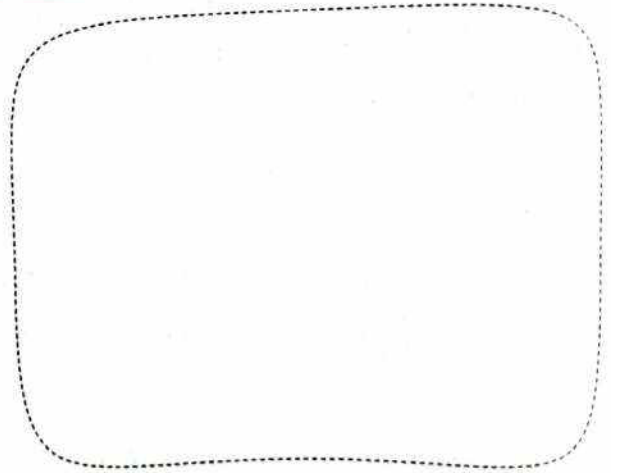
★ Find an Egyptian plant, search and write its life stages. Then Draw. اوجد نبات مصري، ابحث واكتب مراحل نموه. ثم ارسم صورته.

1. First, you

2. Next,

3. After that,

4. Finally, the



Notes for parents

• Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the text.

• Help your child to find an Egyptian plant and write its life stages, then draw it.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

ساعد طفلك أن يجد نبات مصري ويكتب مراحل نموه ثم يرسمه.

نبات البردي هو نبات مميز جدًا. وهو مشهور لأن المصريين القدماء استخدموا نبات البردي لصنع الورق. صنعوا أيضًا الصنادل والسلال من نبات البردي. إنه ينمو في دلتا النيل بالقرب من النهر.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Papyrus is a very special plant.
2. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.
3. Papyrus doesn't need a lot of water.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. We plant the sunflower seed •
2. The sunflower opens and •
3. The shoot grows •
4. Papyrus grows in •
5. Ancient Egyptians made sandals from •

B

- ☐ a. faces the sun.
- ☐ b. papyrus.
- ☐ c. grow roots.
- ☐ d. above the soil.
- ☐ e. the Nile Delta.
- ☐ f. in the soil.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. Delta – Nile – Papyrus – grows – in – the.

.....

2. the – need – does – plant – What ?

.....

3. put – plants – sunlight – the – in – We.

.....

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer or (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة أو (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات ليكون جمل / اسئلة صحيحة.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

germinates - sun - After that - Before

First , you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed (1) and it starts to grow roots under the soil. (2) , the shoot grows above the soil. After about 4 months, it opens and faces the (3)

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The life stages of a tomato"

Guiding words :

soil – seed – sunlight – water



6 Punctuate the following sentence.

why do plants need sunlight and water

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات المعطاة في المربع

طلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى مستخدماً الكلمات المساعدة.

طلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم الصحيحة للجملة المعطاة.

TEST YOUR SKILLS

Why are plants green ?



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى

- A. soil
seed
leaf
reed
desert habitat

- B. بجعة
يسبح
وردة
نبته
بيئة زراعية

My Reading

2 Read and circle. اقرأ وضع دائرة.

- Some seeds can (move-stick) in the wind.
- Farmers work in (desert - agricultural) habitat.
- Tomatoes are (yellow - green) before they are red.
- The roots grow (under - above) the soil.

My Language

3 Read and complete. Use the superlative form.

اقرأ وأكمل. استخدم صيغة التفضيل.

- The kitchen is (hot) room in the house.
- I think that roses are (beautiful) flowers.
- Monkeys are the (cute) animals in the zoo.
- She is (fast) swimmer of the team.
- English is (hard) subject at school.

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence :

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

which plants grow where you live

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 3



leaf

soil

roots

seeds



shoot

balcony

bean
plant

lotus
flower



orange
tree

acacia

rose

daisy



sunflower

papyrus



sleep



slice



slippers

/s/



sweep

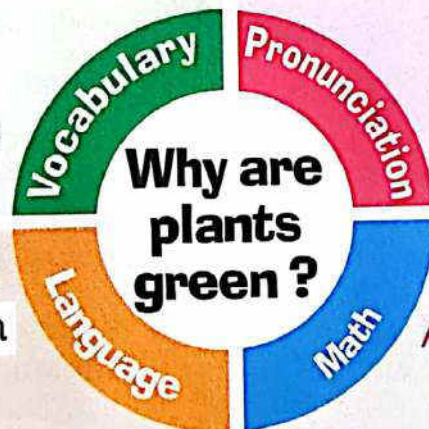


switch



swan

/sw/



Comparative adjectives
short adj. + er + than
- A daisy is taller than a lotus flower.

more + long adj. + than
I think the daisy is more colorful than the rose.

Superlative adjectives
the + short adj. + est
- My city is the nicest place to live.
the most + long adj.
- I think a rose is the most beautiful flower.

A billion is a thousand million.

1,000,000,000

100

→ a hundred

1,000

→ a thousand

10,000

→ ten thousand

100,000

→ a hundred thousand

100,000,000

→ a hundred million

1,000,000,000

→ a billion

Notes for parents

Help your child review unit 3.

ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الثالثة.



1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Tomato plants	green	Tomatoes are green before they are red.
	inside	Tomatoes have seeds inside.
	seed - grow	We plant a seed and the plant grows.
	water	We water the plant every day.
	roots	The roots grow under the soil.
	shoot	The shoot grows above the soil.
	flowers	The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomatoes.
A plant	cells	A plant is made of millions of cells.
	microscope	You can see plant cells with a microscope.
	chloroplasts	Chloroplasts make the plant green.
	food - sunlight	The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use sunlight, carbon dioxide and water.
	carbon dioxide	Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air.
	oxygen	The plants produce oxygen.
The life stages of a sunflower	seed	First, you plant the sunflower seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it.
	germinate	The seed germinates and it starts to grow roots under the soil.
	shoot	The shoot grows above the soil. It grows leaves.
	faces - sun	The sunflower opens and faces the sun.
	dies - drops	The sunflower dies and drops its seeds.
Papyrus	special	Papyrus is a very special plant.
	paper	Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper.
	sandals	They made sandals and baskets from papyrus.
	warm weather	Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather.
	Nile Delta	papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

2. How to make a sentence:

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. was – farm – **There** – no.

2. plant – is – very – special – **Papyrus** – a.

فاعل		فعل	باقي الجملة
1			
2	Papyrus		

٢ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. inside – do – **What** – tomatoes – have ?

2. make – food – does – **When** – the plant – its ?

كلمة الاستفهام		فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال ؟
1	What				
2					

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. the leaves – the flowers – you – and – **Can** – see ?

2. a plant – big – small – cell – or – **Is** ?

فعل مساعد		فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال ؟
1				
2				big or small ?

3. Writing skill :

١. عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Why are plants green ?

Plants

- This is a
sunflower / tomato plant /
rose / daisy.

Needs

- It needs air, water and
sunlight to grow.

Look like

1. It is big/small.
2. It is beautiful.
3. It is yellow/red/green... etc.

Comparison

1. The is bigger / taller
than ...
2. The is the tallest / most
beautiful plant.

Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم

sunflower - beautiful - grow - taller

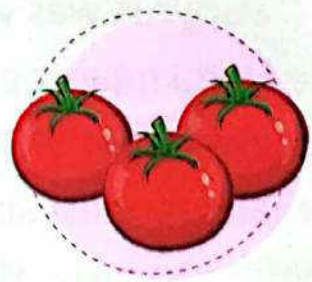
It's a sunflower. It's very beautiful. It
needs air, water and sunlight to grow.
Farmers grow it. The sunflower is taller
than the rose.



Your turn دورك

tomato - green - roots - seed

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



1 Plants and seeds

Tomatoes have seeds inside⁽¹⁾. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes⁽²⁾! We plant a seed and water it every day⁽³⁾. The roots grow under the soil⁽⁴⁾. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits⁽⁵⁾. Tomatoes are green before they are red⁽⁶⁾.

2 Different flowers

There are many different flowers such as sunflower, rose and daisy⁽⁷⁾. The sunflower is the biggest flower⁽⁸⁾. The rose lives longer than the daisy⁽⁹⁾. The sunflower is the heaviest flower⁽¹⁰⁾. The rose is taller than the daisy⁽¹¹⁾. The daisy is more colorful than the rose⁽¹²⁾.

3 Different plant habitats

There are many plant habitats⁽¹³⁾. In agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat⁽¹⁴⁾. They plant bean plants and orange trees⁽¹⁵⁾. There are plants that grow near rivers and lakes, like lotus flower and reed⁽¹⁶⁾. They need a lot of water to grow⁽¹⁷⁾. In desert habitat, there is not much rain so the plants don't need a lot of water⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 Papyrus

Papyrus was very useful to the ancient Egyptians⁽¹⁹⁾. It grows in the Nile Delta near the Nile River⁽²⁰⁾. The Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper⁽²¹⁾. The ancient Egyptians also used the papyrus plants to make sandals and baskets⁽²²⁾. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow⁽²³⁾. It is a very special plant⁽²⁴⁾.

General Exercises

on Unit 3

استمع
في نهاية
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. Some seeds can stick to an animal's fur.
2. The animals move and take the seeds with them.
3. The seeds don't need a new place to grow.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

habitat - rivers - oasis - eat

There are different plant habitats. Plants near (1)
and lakes need a lot of water. In agricultural (2) ,
farmers work and grow food for us to (3)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The land animal is the giraffe.
a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. taller than
2. A daisy is taller a lotus flower.
a. then b. than c. the d. there
3. Some seeds by air.
a. travel b. walk c. float d. stick
4. A plant is made of millions of
a. trees b. creams c. cells d. hills
5. Tomatoes are before they are red.
a. yellow b. green c. orange d. blue

1. Ask your child to listen and write (True) or (False).

2. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the given words in the box.

3. Ask your child to choose the correct word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات المعطاة في المربع.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

• **4 Read and match (A) with (B).**

A

1. Papyrus grows •
2. People need oxygen •
3. Big cities have •
4. Plants near rivers need •
5. Tomatoes have •

B

- ☐ a. to breathe.
- ☐ b. under the soil.
- ☐ c. a lot of water.
- ☐ d. in the Nile Delta near the river.
- ☐ e. seeds inside.
- ☐ f. polluted air.

• **5 Read the text and answer the questions.**

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made sandals and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make
a. rulers b. paper c. pencils d. food
2. Papyrus grows near the
a. river b. desert c. farm d. forest
3. Papyrus is a very special
a. food b. drink c. sweet d. plant

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why is papyrus famous ?

5. What does the papyrus need to grow quickly?

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
5. Ask your child to read the text and answer the questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. does – to grow – the plant – What – need ?

2. are – light – seeds – These – very.

3. a – scarier – cat – A fox – than – is.

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

which plant is the tallest

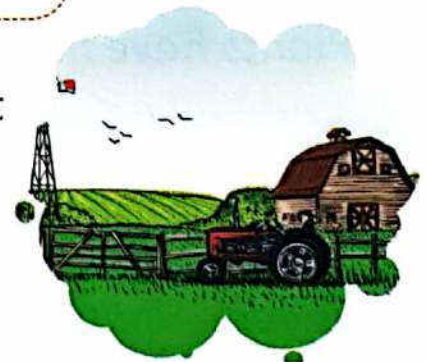
8 Write a paragraph of about (4 - 6) sentences using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Agricultural habitat

Guiding words :

- farmers
- grow
- plants
- eat
- bean plant
- orange trees



6. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

7. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

8. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 - 6 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

GENERAL EXERCISES On Unit 3

Collected From Governorates Exams

بات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. We need good to grow good plants. (المنيا - بنى مزار ٢٠٢٢)
a. seeds b. books c. bags
2. Some seeds are big and light. They on water. (الغربية - غرب المحلة ٢٠٢٢)
a. fly b. float c. fall
3. The plant roots grow the soil. We can't see them well. (القاهرة - المرج ٢٠٢٢)
a. under b. above c. in front of

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Reeds need a lot of water. • (القاهرة - الساحل ٢٠٢٢)
2. There is not much rain in the desert. • (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
3. Plant a lot of trees to • (بورسعيد - شرق ٢٠٢٢)
4. Plants have millions of cells. • (نموذج وزارة ٢٠٢٢)

B

- ☐ a. They grow near the rivers.
- ☐ b. get clean air.
- ☐ c. The cells are very small.
- ☐ d. under the soil.
- ☐ e. Plants there don't need a lot of water.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. under - Roots - the - grow - soil. (ابنى سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٢)

2. need - Why - and sunlight - do - plants - water ? (البحيرة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٢)

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b or c.
2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make a correct sentence/question.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملة/سؤال صحيح.

• **4 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list.**

water - leaves - green - roots

My friend Selim likes farms and plants. He likes the (1) color of the leaves. He likes to use the (2) to grow new plants. He waters the plants every day. The (3) grow under the soil. My friend becomes very happy when there is a flower.

(سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٢)

• **5 Read the passage and answer the questions.**

Amal lives in a village near the river. Farmers grow many fruits and vegetables there for us to eat. They grow onions, tomatoes and rice. Farmers grow apples and oranges, too. There are a lot of plants near the river. Plants near the river need a lot of water.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Plants near the river don't need a lot of water.
2. Farmers grow food for us to eat.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Read and answer the following questions.

3. Where does Amal live ?

4. What do farmers grow near the river ? (بورسعيد - شمال ٢٠٢٢)

• **6 Punctuate the following sentence.**

papyrus is an egyptian plant

(البحيرة - إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٢)

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the given box.
5. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the given questions.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

Stop here !

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
مجموعة من مختلف المناطق الأزهرية.

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose.

1. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make
(paper – glass – wood)
2. Papyrus grows in the Nile Delta near the
(desert – sea – river)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

plants - agricultural - bean

Reem : In which habitat do you live ?

Nada : I live in (1) habitat.

Reem : Which (2) grow in it ?

Nada : There are (3) plants and orange trees.

C. The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Zein wants to be an engineer.
2. Faten is a software engineer.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

D. Vocabulary and structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. A snake is the animal.
a. scarier b. scariest c. scary
2. We use the to make things bigger.
a. microscope b. plant cell c. chloroplasts

Review on Unit 1

Vocabulary



bananas



chicken



grapes



milk



mango



stomach



lungs



mouth



nose



small intestine



gloves



large intestine



heart



muscle



band-aid



sugarcane

Phonics

Short vowel



mom



mix



pan



bag

Long vowel



cake



rice



nose



snake

Language

What foods do we produce in Egypt?

We produce vegetables like onions.



I eat fruit and I exercise.

I love burgers, but I only eat one a week.

Review on Unit 2

Vocabulary



eagle



fennec fox



camel



crocodile



snake



spider



pelican



wing



horse



fur



feather



beak



rhinoceros

Phonics



pelican



pin



pear



peas



bear



bee



beak



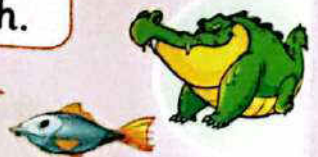
bird

Language

Dogs are thinner than elephants.



Crocodiles are more dangerous than fish.



Review on Unit 3

Vocabulary



shoot



soil



roots



leaf



seeds



flower



acacia



daisy



sunflower



desert



agricultural



reed

Phonics



slippers



sleep



slice



swan



switch



swim



sweep

Language



My cat is the
nicest in our street.

I think a rose is the
most beautiful flower.



NON-FICTION READER

Where does chocolate come from ?



Key Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



seed بذرة



seedling شتلة / نبتة صغيرة



cacao tree شجرة الكاكاو



Pods قرون

Extra vocabulary

roast	يحمص	oven	فرن
bar of chocolate	قالب شيكولاتة	dry	يجفف

★ Look, listen and read. أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

Where does chocolate come from ?

People in **Mexico**⁽¹⁾ were the first to make chocolate about 1,000 years ago. **Spanish**⁽²⁾ people brought chocolate to Europe in the 1500s. Now people make chocolate all around the world. Do you know where chocolate comes from ? It comes from the **cacao tree**⁽³⁾. Today, most cacao comes from trees which grow in Africa. Farmers **plant**⁽⁴⁾ cacao seeds in the **soil**⁽⁵⁾. The seeds need water and **sunshine**⁽⁶⁾. The plants grow taller. The fruits of the cacao tree are called **pods**⁽⁷⁾. When the pods are ready, the farmers open them and dry them in the sun. The farmers **roast**⁽⁸⁾ the cacao beans in an **oven**⁽⁹⁾. They take out the seeds. The cocoa seeds go to a **factory**⁽¹⁰⁾. In the factory, the workers add sugar and milk. Then they **press**⁽¹¹⁾ it down to make a bar of chocolate. Then it's yummy to eat!



Check Vocabulary

- (1) دولة المكسيك (2) أسباني (الجنسية) (3) شجرة الكاكاو (4) يزرع (5) تربة زراعية (6) ضوء الشمس (7) قرون النبات (8) يحمص (9) فرن (10) مصنع (11) يضغط

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help your child look, listen to the text and read it.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع إلى النص ويقراه



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. People in were the first to make chocolate.
 a. America b. Africa c. Mexico d. Canada
2. Today, most cacao comes from trees which grow in
 a. Africa b. Europe c. Australia d. America
3. In the factory, the workers add sugar and to the cacao.
 a. butter b. water c. salt d. milk
4. The fruits of the cacao tree are called
 a. pods b. seeds c. trees d. bars

2 Read and put the sentences in the correct order.

- ☒ 1 The farmer plants the cacao seed.
- ☐ Then the farmer roasts the cacao seeds in an oven.
- ☐ After that, the cacao seeds go to the factory.
- ☐ The farmer picks the cacao beans and puts them in the sun.
- ☐ The seed grows into a seedling and then a tree.
- ☐ The factory workers add sugar and milk, and the chocolate is ready !
- ☐ The tree grows cacao beans.
- ☐ The seed germinates.

3 Look and write.

1.



2.



3.



4.

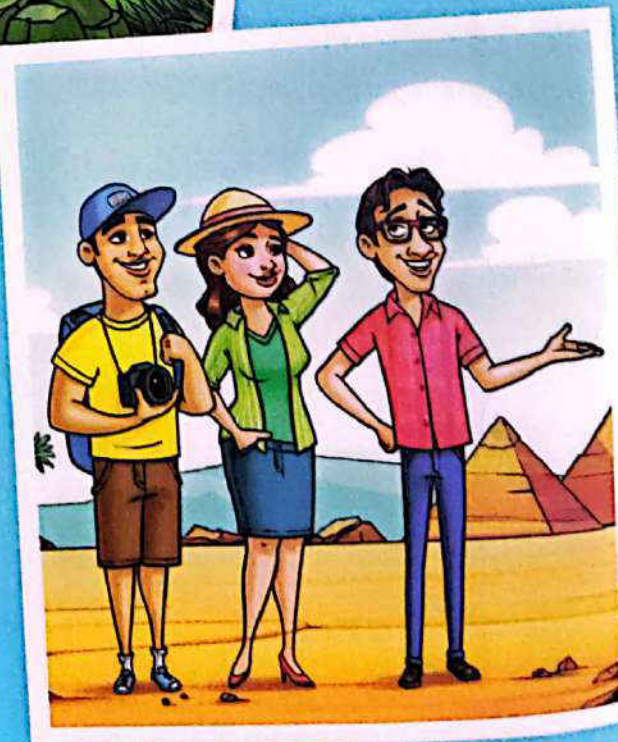
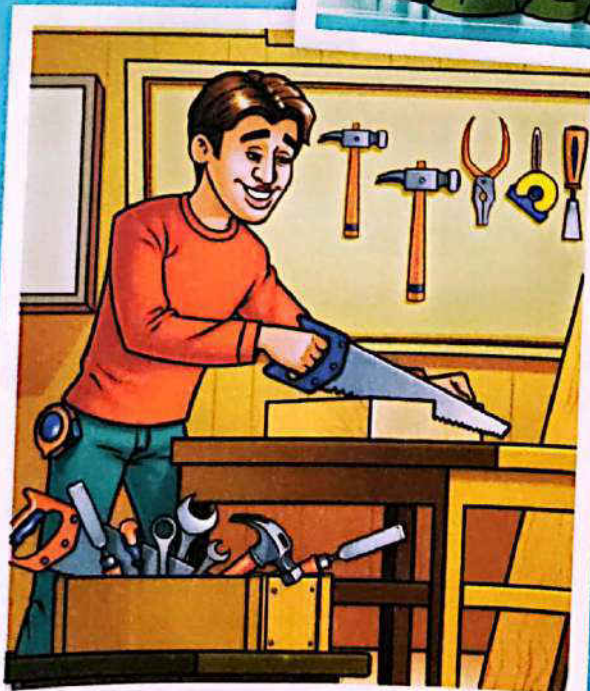


1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to read and put the sentences in the correct order.
3. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
 اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع الجمل في الترتيب الصحيح.
 اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات.

Theme 2

Myself and others





Skills. في نهاية الوحدة.
قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.
Test your skills. في نهاية الوحدة.
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

لإتقان
الوحدة

Aims of unit four :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about different houses and places in a town.
- استمع، اقرأ، ابحث واكتب عن مختلف المنازل والأماكن في بلدة.
- practice making sentences with prepositions.
- ائدرّب على تكوين الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر.
- read and listen to a short story.
- اقرأ واستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.

الأنهاف العامة للوحدة الرابعة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- learn about and say words with /f/ and /v/.
- ائعلم عن وأقول كلمات بأصوات /f/ و /v/.
- write a fact file.
- اكتب ملف حقائق.
- research and make a poster.
- ابحث وأصنع ملصق.



Key Vocabulary

★ Look, listen and repeat.

نظراً، استمع وردد.



kitchen
مطبخ



balcony
شرفة (بلكونة)



bathroom
دورة مياه



living room
حجرة معيشة



bedroom
حجرة نوم



At home
في المنزل



dining room
حجرة الطعام



apartment
شقة سكنية

Types of houses

أنواع المنازل



tent
خيمة



cave
كهف



houseboat
منزل عائِم



house
منزل

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم.

- **Learn** : Canada has some very unusual houses. Some houses look like a cube. Others are made of ice.

تواف كندا لديها بعض المنازل الغير عادية جدًا. بعض المنازل تشبه المكعب. منازل أخرى مصنوعة من الثلج.

Extra vocabulary

fantastic	رائع	outside	بالخارج
lovely	جميل / محبوب	cloth	قماش
street	شارع	quietly	بهدوء
unusual	غير عادي / استثنائي	whole	كل
rock	صخرة	favorite	مفضل

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

relax	يسترخى
organize	ينظم
produce	ينتج

Past

relaxed
organized
produced

Irregular

Present

sit	يجلس
do	يفعل / يؤدي

Past

sat
did

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- see the whole street يرى الشارع بأكمله
- That sounds good ! هذا يبدو جيدًا !
- It's never too hot or too cold. الجو ليس شديد الحرارة أو شديد البرودة.
- (be) made of cloth مصنوع من القماش
- take a shower يأخذ دُش
- Let's do it! هيا بنا نفعل ذلك !

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look, unscramble and write.

1.



d r e b o o m

2.



t i c h k n e

3.



a e v c

• Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويرتب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبهم بشكل صحيح.



Listening and Reading

★ Listen, read and role-play. استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

(Mom is talking with Talia about their apartment)



Look at our lovely new apartment !

انظري إلى شقتنا الجديدة الجميلة !



It's fantastic !

إنها رائعة !



Which is your favorite room ?

أي غرفة مفضلة لديك ؟



For me, it's my bedroom. I can relax and do my homework quietly.
بالنسبة لي، غرفة نومى. يمكننى الاسترخاء وأداء واجبى المنزل بهدوء.



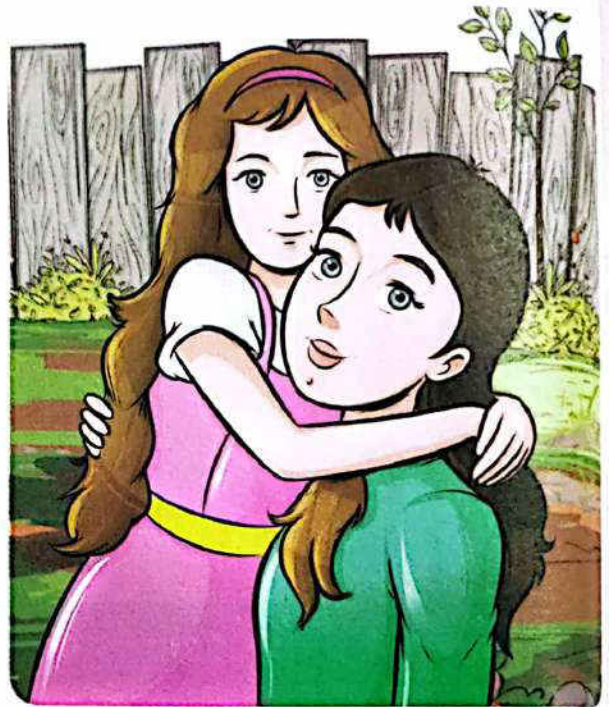
My favorite is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street ! Talia, can you help me organize the kitchen ?

المفضل لى هى غرفة المعيشة مع الشرفة. يمكننى النظر إلى الشارع بأكمله !
هل يمكنك مساعدتى فى تنظيم المطبخ يا تاليا ؟



That sounds good, let's do it!

هذا يبدو جيدًا، فلنعمل ذلك !



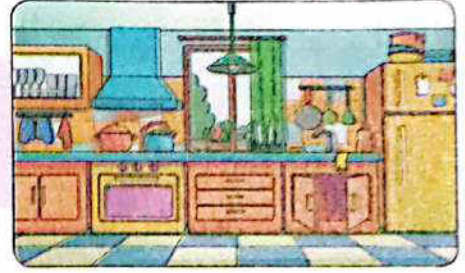
Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

★ Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

1 I cook food in the



2 I sleep here in the



3 I talk to my family and watch television in the



4 I take a shower in the



5 I love to sit in the I can see the people in the street.



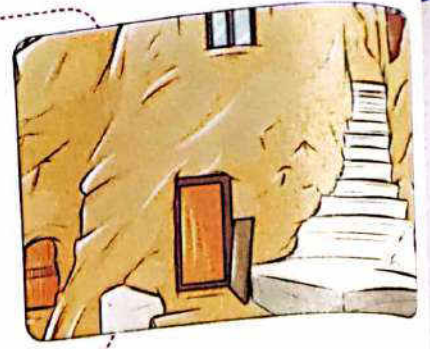
6 I eat dinner with my family in the



• Help your child look at the pictures, read and identify the rooms, then complete the sentences.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويتعرف على الغرف ثم يكمل الجمل.

★ **Look, listen and read.** أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.



1

My grandparents live in a cave.
The rooms of their house are in the rock.
Inside it's never too hot or too cold.

يعيش أجدادي في كهف. غرف منزلهم في الصخر.
في الداخل لا يكون الجو شديد الحرارة أو شديد البرودة.

2

My aunt moved to a new apartment
with her family. They are very happy
because they have a big balcony.

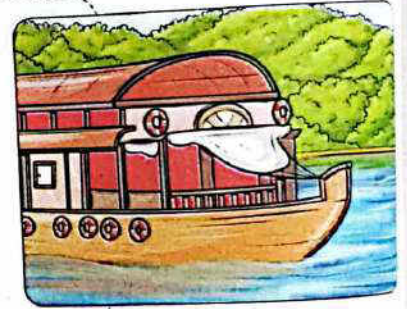
انتقلت عمتي/خالتي إلى شقة جديدة مع عائلتها. إنهم
سعداء جدًا لأن لديهم شرفة كبيرة.



3

My friend and her family live on
a houseboat. It's small, but she loves
living on water.

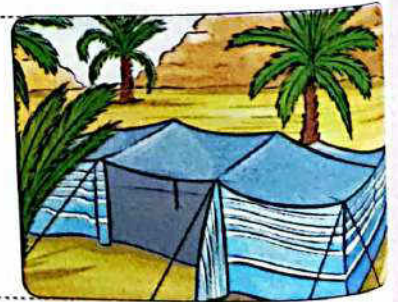
صديقتي وعائلتها يعيشون في منزل عائم. إنه صغير، لكنها
تحب العيش على الماء.



4

In the desert, some people live in a tent.
This home is made of cloth.

في الصحراء، يسكن الناس في خيمة. هذا المنزل مصنوع من
القماش.



5

I love living in a house because it is big.
My grandparents live with us. I can play
outside with my brother and sister.

أحب العيش في منزل لأنه كبير (الحجم). أجدادي يعيشون
معنا. يمكنني اللعب في الخارج مع أخي وأختي.



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read the sentences.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ الجمل.



Read and spell

balcony	شرفة
kitchen	مطبخ
bedroom	حجرة نوم
bathroom	دورة مياه
living room	غرفة معيشة
dining room	غرفة الطعام
apartment	شقة سكنية
tent	خيمة
house	منزل
cave	كهف
houseboat	منزل عائم
organize	ينظم
street	شارع
outside	بالخارج
rock	صخرة
cloth	قماش
lovely	جميل / محبوب
relax	يسترخى
quietly	بهدوء

Complete

b _ l _ on _
 k _ t _ _ en
 b _ dr _ o _
 ba _ _ roo _
 l _ v _ n _ room
 d _ ni _ g _ oo _
 a _ art _ e _ t
 t _ n _
 _ ou _ e
 _ a _ e
 h _ _ seb _ _ t
 or _ a _ ize
 str _ _ t
 _ _ ts _ de
 ro _ _
 clo _ _
 lo _ el _
 r _ la _
 qu _ et _ y

Write

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

street – eat – balcony – outside

I love my house. It is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play (1) with my brother and sister in our garden. My favorite room is the living room with the (2) I can see the whole (3)

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is - What - favorite - your - room?

2. dinner – my family – eat – I – with.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. My friend loves to live on water. He lives on a
a. cave b. house

2. I live in a The rooms of my house are in the rock.

2. I live in a The rooms of my house are in the rock.

3. I watch television in the with my family.

4. We a shower in the bathroom.

4. We a shower in the bathroom.
- a. watch b. listen
- c. bathroom

5. I eat dinner in the c. take

- a. bathroom b. bedroom

- c. dining room

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

3. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Hello! My name is Hamza. I want to tell you about myself. I live in an apartment. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony. I can see the whole street. I play games with my brother in the living room. I help my mother in the kitchen. I play football on Friday with my neighbor.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Hamza lives in a house.
2. He helps his mother in the kitchen.
3. He plays games with his neighbor.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions .

4. What's Hamza's favorite room ?
.....
5. Who does Hamza play football with ?
.....

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. People in the desert •
2. I love living in an •
3. My favorite room •
4. I eat dinner •
5. The rooms of the cave •

B

- ☐ a. apartment.
- ☐ b. in the dining room.
- ☐ c. made of cloth.
- ☐ d. live in a tent.
- ☐ e. are in the rock.
- ☐ f. is the living room.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what s your favorite room
.....

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ و يصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.



Key Vocabulary



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

school
مدرسةhospital
مستشفىsupermarket
متجر متعدد الأقسام
(سوبر ماركت)post office
مكتب بريدshopping mall
مركز تسوق

Places

أماكن

office
مكتب عمل

Extra vocabulary

couch	أريكة / كنبه	sick	مريض
village	قرية	museum	متحف
clothes	ملابس	park	حديقة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

live يعيش
work يعمل

Past

lived
worked

Irregular

Present

send يرسل
learn يتعلم
buy يشتري

Past

sent
learned / learnt
bought

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

• live in a village يعيش في قرية | • next to the Nile بجوار نهر النيل

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويكررها.

1 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



h c s o l o

2.



y l f a m i

3.



l v i l a e g

2 Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



★ Listen, read and learn.

My name's Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It is between a yellow house and a brown house. There are tall trees behind the house.



Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Read and
choose the
correct answer.

Learn

1- Zain lives in a / an next to the Nile .

a. city b. town c. village d. oasis

Practice

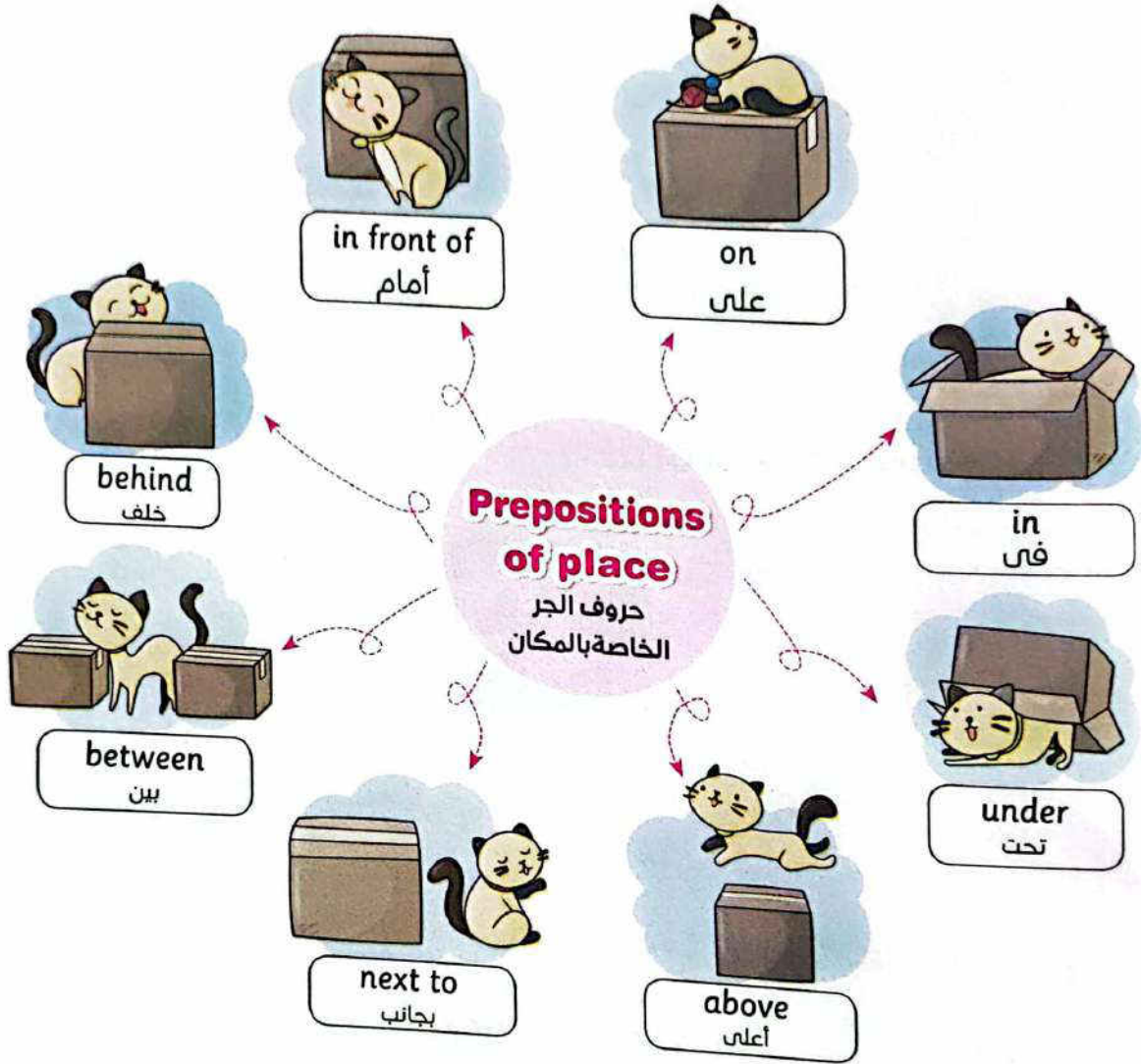
2- Zain lives with his

a. family b. friends c. cousins d. aunts

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويرتب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبهم بشكل صحيح.
2. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة.
- Help your child listen, read the text and learn.
اسمى زين. أعيش في قرية بجوار النيل. أعيش في منزل مع عائلتي. منزلنا ليس الأكبر في القرية. إنه بين منزل أصفر اللون ومنزل بني اللون. هناك أشجار طويلة خلف المنزل.

1. Prepositions of place. حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

نحن نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر مكان شيء ما.



2. To ask about places. للسؤال عن الأماكن.

- Where + is + place أين + المكان ؟



Where is your house ?

أين منزلك ؟



My house is **between** two tall trees.

منزلي بين شجرتين طويلتين.



Notes for parents

1. Help your child identify the prepositions of place.
2. Help your child know how to ask and answer about places.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.
ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يسأل ويجيب عن الأماكن.

1 Where's the cat ? Draw a line to match the picture with its preposition.



next to

in

in front of

between

under

2 Read and circle the correct preposition.

1. My dad is (on - in - next) the kitchen.
2. Our cat likes sleeping with me (between - on - in front of) the bed.
3. I'm waiting for (انتظر) my friend (in front of - above - on) her house.
4. We're playing a game. I'm hiding (أختبئ) (on - under - behind) the door.
5. I like sitting (under - next - on) the couch.
6. He is standing (on - between - in front of) the mirror.
7. The kids are playing (above - in - next) the park.

1. Ask your child to draw a line to match each picture with its preposition.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يرسم خط ليصل كل صورة بحرف الجر الخاص بها.

2. Ask your child to read the sentences and circle the correct preposition.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويضع دائرة حول حرف الجر الصحيح.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

1. The supermarket



is a place where we buy food.

المتجر (السوبر ماركت) هو المكان الذي نشتري منه الطعام.

2. The post office



is a place where we send letters.

مكتب البريد هو المكان الذي نرسل عبره الخطابات.

3. The school



is a place where I learn.

المدرسة هي المكان الذي أتعلم فيه.

4. The shopping mall



is a place where I buy clothes and shoes.

مركز التسوق هو المكان الذي اشتري منه الملابس والأحذية.

5. The office



is a place where my mom and dad work.

المكتب هو المكان الذي يعمل فيه أمي وأبي.

6. The hospital



is a place where we go when we are sick.

المستشفى هي المكان الذي نذهب إليه عندما نكون مرضى.

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the different places.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الأماكن المختلفة.



Read and spell

school	مدرسة
hospital	مستشفى
supermarket	متجر
shopping mall	مركز تسوق
office	مكتب عمل
post office	مكتب بريد
couch	أريكة
send	يرسل
museum	متحف
learn	يتعلم
village	قرية
between	بين
behind	خلف
above	أعلى
under	تحت
in front of	أمام
next to	بجانب

Complete

s _ _ oo _
h _ sp _ t _ l
s _ pe _ m _ r _ et
sho _ _ in _ ma _ _
o _ f _ ce
p _ st of _ i _ _
cou _ _
s _ nd
m _ seu _
l _ _ rn
v _ ll _ ge
be _ w _ e _
b _ h _ n _
ab _ v _
un _ er
in f _ o _ t of
n _ x _ t _

Write

* Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، يتهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There are three chairs in my room.
2. The table is between the two chairs.
3. The book is on the table.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Ali lives in •
2. The school is a place •
3. The supermarket is in front •
4. The hospital is between •
5. My mom and dad work •

B

- ☐ a. of the post office.
- ☐ b. where we send letters.
- ☐ c. the shopping mall and the office.
- ☐ d. a village next to the Nile.
- ☐ e. where we learn.
- ☐ f. at the office.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. live – village – I – in – a.

2. the – is – Where – hospital ?

3. the post office – next – is – to – The school.

4. tall – the house – There're – trees – behind.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

الطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

الطلب من طفلك يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

الطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

clothes – between – shopping mall – next

My name's Hana. I live in Cairo. There is a (1) in my street. I buy (2) and shoes from that shopping mall. It's (3) to my school where I learn.

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The cat is the bed and the table.
a. between b. next c. in d. on
2. There is a shopping next to the supermarket.
a. mall b. street c. market d. office
3. The supermarket is next the school.
a. of b. on c. in d. to
4. We go to the when we are sick.
a. hospital b. supermarket
c. school d. office
5. The is a place where we send letters.
a. post office b. office c. school d. hospital
6. We clothes from the shopping mall.
a. eat b. play c. buy d. drive
7. is your house ? - It's between two tall trees.
a. When b. Where c. What d. Who

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

my name s hamza

4. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.

5. Ask your child to choose the correct word.

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

استمع وردد.

★ Listen and repeat.

Key Vocabulary



Turn right.
اتجه يميناً.



Go straight ahead.
سير بشكل مستقيم.



Turn left.
اتجه يساراً.



It's on the corner.
إنه فى الزاوية.

Giving Directions

إعطاء
الاتجاهات



Take the second right.
خذ المنعطف الثانى يمين.

Extra vocabulary

store	متجر	station	محطة
sports club	نادى رياضى	south	جنوب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

love يحب
walk يمشى
turn يتجه

Past

loved
walked
turned

Irregular

Present

come يأتى
take يأخذ
see يرى

Past

came
took
saw

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- near my house بالقرب من منزلى
- on the other side على الجانب الآخر
- Excuse me ! معذرة !
- come to ...
- See you soon !
- Thank you.

يأتى لـ
أراك لاحقاً !
شكراً لك.

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك ان يستمع الى الكلمات ويرددهم.



I love my town⁽¹⁾. It is small, but it has stores⁽²⁾, offices⁽³⁾, a school and many other places⁽⁴⁾. It is a good place to live. I walk to school every morning. My school is next to⁽⁵⁾ the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends. Near⁽⁶⁾ my house, there is a supermarket. It is between⁽⁷⁾ the station and the sports club⁽⁸⁾. The shopping mall is on the other side of the station, so the station is between the supermarket and the shopping mall. My dad's office is in front of the park. It's next to the post office.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مدينة صغيرة
- (2) متاجر / محلات
- (3) مكاتب
- (4) أماكن
- (5) بجوار
- (6) قريب
- (7) بين
- (8) نادي رياضي

Answer
the following
questions.

- Learn** 1. Where is the school ?
- It's next to the hospital.
- Practice** 2. Where is his dad's office ?
.....

• Help your child to look at the picture, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.

أنا أحب بلدي. إنها صغيرة، لكنها بها متاجر، مكاتب ومدرسة والعديد من الأماكن الأخرى. إنها مكان جيد للعيش فيه. أسير إلى المدرسة كل صباح مدرسي بجوار المستشفى. بجوار المستشفى، توجد حديقة. أنا غالباً أعب كرة القدم في الحديقة مع أصدقائي. يوجد سوبر ماركت بالقرب من منزلي. إنه بين المحطة والنادي الرياضي. يقع مركز التسوق على الجانب الآخر من المحطة، وبالتالي المحطة بين السوبر ماركت وبين مركز التسوق. مكتب أبي يقع أمام الحديقة. إنه بجانب مكتب البريد.

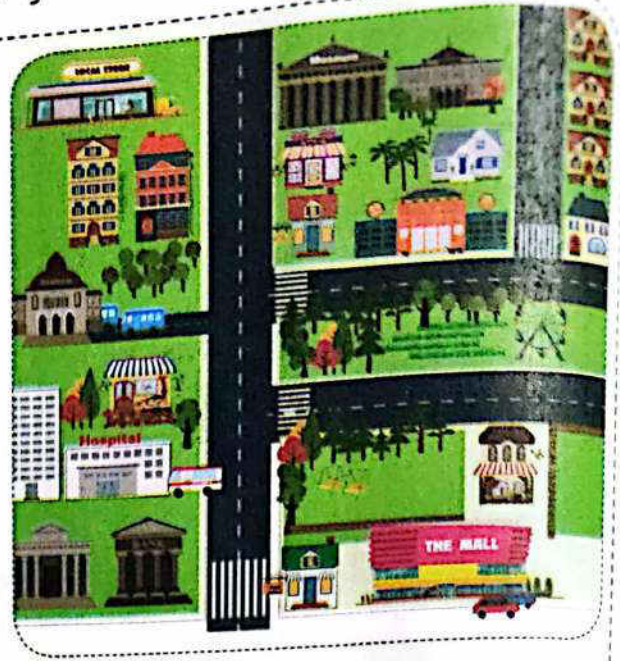
★ **Look, listen and read.** أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

Hi Dina!

I'm so happy you are coming to my house today. Here are some **directions**⁽¹⁾. From the **corner**⁽²⁾ of South Street with Lateef **Street**⁽³⁾, go **straight ahead**⁽⁴⁾. Take the **second right**⁽⁵⁾ to Abdelwahab Street. Go straight ahead. Turn left at the **supermarket**⁽⁶⁾. My house is between the supermarket and the school.

See you soon!

Fareeda xx



مرحبًا دينا ! أنا سعيدة جدًا لأنك ستأتى إلى منزلى اليوم. إليك بعض الاتجاهات. انطلقى إلى الأمام مباشرة من زاوية الشارع الجنوبي مع شارع لطيف. اتخذى اليمين الثانى إلى شارع عبد الوهاب. أذهبى إلى الأمام مباشرة. انعطفى يسارًا عند السوبر ماركت. منزلى بين السوبر ماركت والمدرسة. أراك قريبًا !

فريدة.

Check Vocabulary

(1) اتجاهات	(2) زاوية	(3) شارع
(4) بشكل مستقيم	(5) ثانى يمين	(6) متجر

★ **Listen, read and role-play.** استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



Excuse me, where's the post office ? معذرةً، أين مكتب البريد ؟



Go straight ahead. Turn right. Take the second left. It's on the corner.

سير بشكل مستقيم. اتجه يمينًا. خذ المنعطف الثانى يسارًا. إنه على الناصية.



Thank you !

شكرًا لك !

Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the email.

- Help your child listen to the dialogue and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly, then ask him/her to role-play it with his/her colleagues.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ رسالة البريد الإلكتروني. ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة، ثم اطلب منه أن يتبادل الأدوار مع زملائه.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There's a park in front of the hospital.
2. My school is next to the park.
3. I often play football with my friends.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Nader's town is •
2. My town is a good place •
3. There's a park near •
4. My house is between •
5. My town has stores, •

B

- ☐ a. my house.
- ☐ b. the station and the sports club.
- ☐ c. on my house.
- ☐ d. offices, and many other places.
- ☐ e. small.
- ☐ f. to live in.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

park – learn – place – stores

I love my town. It is small, but it has (1) , offices, a school and many other places. It is a good (2) to live. I walk to school every morning. My school is next to the park. I often play football in the (3) with my friends.

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ و يصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

④ Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the hospital – to – next – My – school – is.

2. second – the – Take – right.

3. post – the – office – is – Where ?

4. love – town – I – my.

⑤ Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. right. The park is on the left.

a. Turn

b. Take

c. Talk

2. The hospital is the corner.

a. of

b. off

c. on

3. is the supermarket ? - It's on the left.

a. When

b. Whose

c. Where

4. My dad's office is of the park.

a. between

b. in front

c. behind

5. My school is next the station.

a. to

b. of

c. on

6. I play football in the

a. hospital

b. post office

c. sports club

⑥ Punctuate the following sentence.

excuse me, where's the supermarket

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

5. Ask your child to choose the correct word.

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات ترقيم للجملة المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

beach	شاطئ	bazaar	بازار (سوق تجارى)
upside down	مقلوب - رأساً على عقب	safaris	رحلات سفارى
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	restaurant	مطعم
Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش (فى الفردقة)	Brighton Pier	رصيف ميناء برايتون

تنويه ■ **Key Vocabulary** هى المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

rides	ألعاب الملاهى / جولات	diagram	رسم بياني
photo	صورة فوتوغرافية	fact	حقيقة
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	drawings	رسومات
tourist	سائح	Hurghada	مدينة الفردقة
map	خريطة	town	مدينة صغيرة

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- in the east of Egypt
- on the Red Sea
- There are lots of interesting things to do.

فى شرق مصر
على ساحل البحر الأحمر

- It's great fun !
- a very unusual house
- go on safaris

هناك الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة لتقوم بها.
إنها متعة كبيرة !

منزل استثنائى (غير تقليدى) تماماً
يذهب لرحلات سفارى

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

1 Look and write the missing letters.

1.



b _ a _ h

2.



re _ t _ _ ra _ _

3.



s _ or _

4.



ba _ a _ r

2 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



i s t r u o t

2.



d e i r

3.

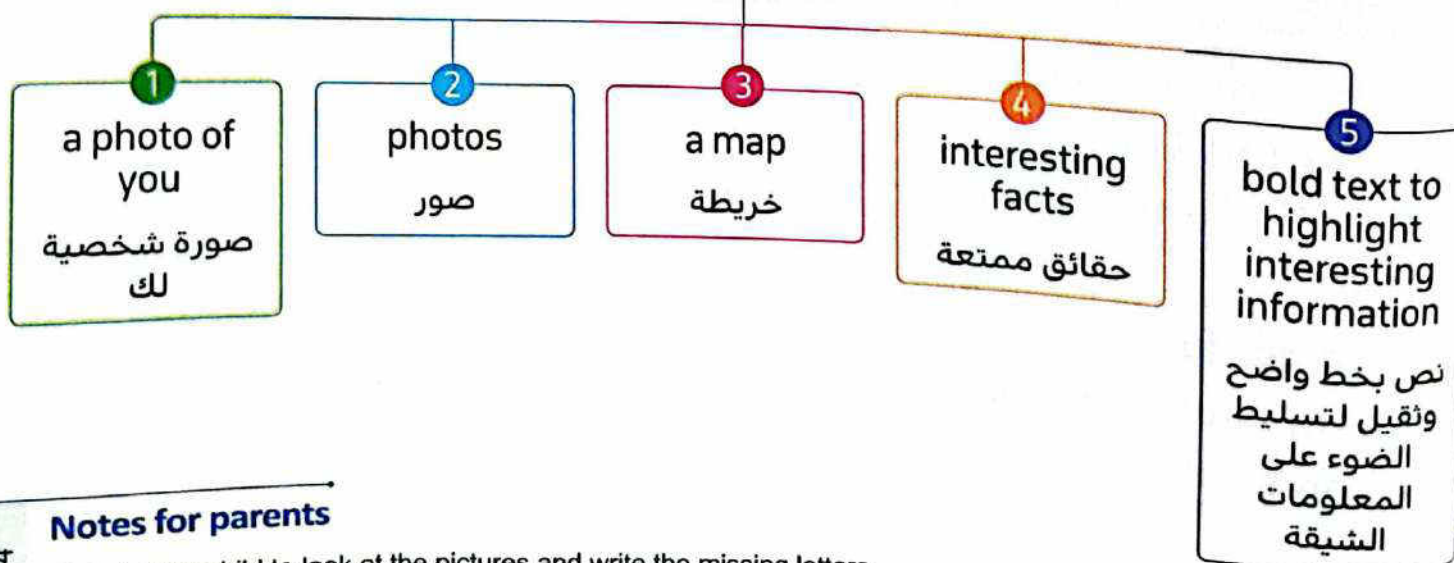


n w t o

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

How to make your text interesting.
كيفية جعل النص الخاص بك شيقاً.

استخدم Use



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters.

2. Ask your child to look, unscramble the letters and write the words correctly.

• Help your child read and learn how to make the text interesting.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر، يرتب الحروف ويكتب الكلمات بطريقة صحيحة.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم كيف يجعل النص شيقاً.

★ Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

City	Hurghada
Where is it ?	in the east of Egypt
How many people live there ?	about 190,000 people
Interesting places in Hurghada	beach, some beautiful houses, Sahl Hasheesh, bazaars

Hurghada-My town⁽¹⁾

east - houses - Hurghada - beach



Mariam

Hi, I'm Mariam. I live⁽²⁾ in a city called It's in the of Egypt on the Red Sea. It's a big city and about 190,000 people⁽³⁾ live here.



Hurghada on the map

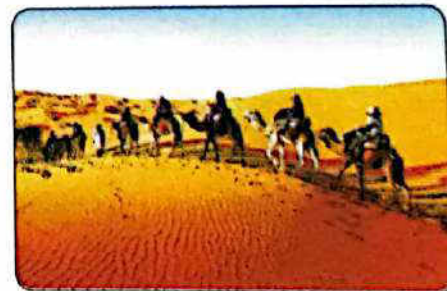
In Hurghada, there's a and there are lots of interesting⁽⁴⁾ things to do. There is the Sahara Desert⁽⁵⁾ where lots of tourists⁽⁶⁾ go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful and interesting bazaars⁽⁷⁾.



Hurghada beach



Sahl Hasheesh, Egypt



Sahara Desert

Check Vocabulary

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------|
| (1) مدينة صغيرة | (2) يعيش |
| (3) ناس | (4) شيق |
| (5) الصحراء الكبرى | (6) سائحين |
| (7) أسواق تجارية (بازارات) | |

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Where is Hurghada ?
- It's in the east of Egypt
on the Red Sea.

Practice

2. What's in Sahl Hasheesh ?
.....

* Help your child to look at the pictures, read the fact file and complete the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ملف الحقائق ويكمل النص.

مرحبًا، أنا مريم. أعيش في مدينة تسمى الغردقة. تقع الغردقة في شرق مصر على البحر الأحمر. وهي مدينة كبيرة يعيش بها حوالي ١٩٠ ألف شخص. يوجد بها شاطئ والكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها. هناك الصحراء الكبرى حيث يذهب الكثير من السائحين في رحلات السفاري لدينا سهل حشيش في جنوب الغردقة الذي يوجد به بعض المازل الجميلة والبازارات المثيرة للاهتمام.

Brighton-My town

Hi, I'm Alex. I live in a city called Brighton. It is in the south of England. It's a small city and about 200,000 people live here. In Brighton, there is a beach and there are lots of cool **stores**⁽¹⁾ and **restaurants**⁽²⁾. Lots of tourists come to my town to go to the **beach**⁽³⁾. We also have Brighton Pier. There are many **games**⁽⁴⁾ and **rides**⁽⁵⁾ for children here. We also have a very **unusual**⁽⁶⁾ house in Brighton - the Upside Down House ! It's great fun !



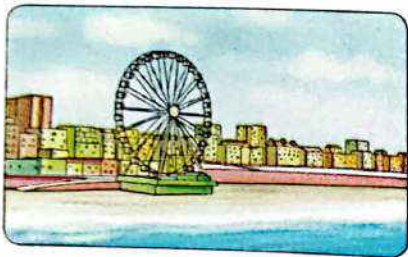
Alex

Pop Quiz

ترب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع



Brighton on the map



Brighton Beach



Brighton Pier



The Upside Down House, Brighton

Check Vocabulary

- (1) متاجر (2) مطاعم (3) شاطئ (4) ألعاب (5) ألعاب الملاهي (6) استثنائي/مميز

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. Where does Alex live ?

- He lives in a city called Brighton.

Practice

2. Why do tourists come to Brighton ?

★ Read and complete the fact file.

Town	
Where is it ?	
How many people live there ?	
Interesting things in Brighton	

Notes for parents

- Help your child read the text and complete the fact file.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ النص ويكمل ملف الحقائق.

ملاحظة: أنا أليكس أعيش في مدينة تسمى برايتون. تقع في جنوب إنجلترا. إنها مدينة صغيرة يعيش فيها حوالي ٢٠٠ ألف شخص. يوجد شاطئ في برايتون والكثير من متاجر والمطاعم الرائعة. الكثير من السياح يأتون إلى مدينتي للذهاب إلى الشاطئ. لدينا أيضا رصيف ميناء برايتون. هناك العديد من الألعاب والألعاب الملهي للأطفال. لدينا أيضا منزل مثير جدا في برايتون - البيت المقلوب ! إنه ممتع جدا !

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Reham lives in Hurghada.
2. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.
3. There are interesting bazaars in Luxor.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. I live in a city called •
2. You can go on •
3. Hurghada is in •
4. Where •
5. There're many games and rides •

B

- ☐ a. the east of Egypt.
- ☐ b. is Hurghada ?
- ☐ c. Hurghada.
- ☐ d. for children.
- ☐ e. safaris in the Sahara Desert.
- ☐ f. the north of Hurghada.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. go – of – Lots – safaris – tourists - on.
.....
2. in – live – How – people – many - Hurghada ?
.....
3. a very – house – have – unusual – We – in Brighton.
.....
4. in – Who – lives – Hurghada ?
.....

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

3. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Brighton is a small city in the south of England. About 200,000 people live there. In Brighton, there is a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. Lots of tourists come to Brighton to go to the beach.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Brighton is in the of England.
a. north b. south c. east d. west
2. Tourists come to Brighton to go to the
a. supermarket b. school c. office d. beach
3. The underlined word "there" refers to
a. Brighton b. England c. stores d. restaurants

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What are the interesting places in Brighton ?
.....
5. Is Brighton a big city ?
.....

5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. How people live in Brighton ?
– 200,00 people live there.
a. often b. many c. long d. much
2. You can go on in the Sahara Desert.
a. running b. diving c. swimming d. safaris
3. lives in Hurghada ? – Mariam.
a. What b. Who c. Does d. When
4. Ghada live in Hurghada ?
a. Do b. Does c. is d. Are

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

it is in the south of england

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the given questions.
5. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

tourist boat

قارب سياحي

summer

فصل الصيف

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها. Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية). قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

suddenly

فجأة

English

اللغة الإنجليزية

Chinese

اللغة الصينية

the Nile

نهر النيل

child

طفل

river

نهر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

smile يتسّم
shout يصيح - يصرخ
save ينقذ
decide يقرر

Past

smiled
shouted
saved
decided

Irregular

Present

fall يسقط
meet يقابل
speak يتحدث
swim يسبح

Past

fell
met
spoke
swam

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- work on tourist boats
- travel up and down the Nile
- from all over the world
- fell into the river

يعمل على المراكب السياحية
ينتقل في نهر النيل صعودًا وهبوطًا
من كل أنحاء العالم
سقط في النهر

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.



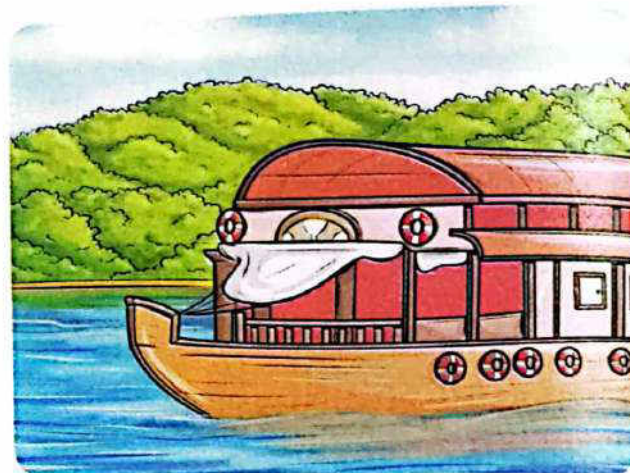
تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

How did Sherif's dad help the small child ?

العيش على متن قارب **Living on a boat**

The beginning

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the **summer**⁽¹⁾. His parents work on **tourist boats**⁽²⁾ so he goes with them. They **travel**⁽³⁾ up and down the **Nile**⁽⁴⁾.



He likes the summer very much.
He sees many interesting places
and he meets people from all over the world.
He **speaks**⁽⁵⁾ English and Chinese with the tourists.

The middle

One day, the boat stopped and Sherif saw some children playing. Suddenly⁽⁶⁾ a small child fell into the river! The child shouted⁽⁷⁾ 'Please help me !'

Sherif called his dad. Sherif's dad saw the child and jumped into the river. He swam and saved the child ! The child smiled and said. 'Thank you so much!'

The end

Sherif was very happy, but he also **decided**⁽⁸⁾ to learn to swim.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) فصل الصيف
- (2) قوارب سياحية
- (3) يسافر
- (4) نهر النيل
- (5) يتحدث
- (6) فجأة
- (7) صاح / صرخ
- (8) قرر

Read and choose the correct answer.

Learn

1- Sherif lives on a in the summer .

- a. ferry b. canoe c. **boat** d. ship

Practise

2- Sherif speaks English and Chinese with the

- a. family b. tourists c. friends d. teachers

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة.

يعيش صديقي شريف على قارب في فصل الصيف. يعمل والديه على متن قوارب سياحية لذلك يذهب معهم سياهرون صعدوا وهبوطا في نهر النيل. هو يحب الصيف كثيرا. يري الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة ويلتقي بأشخاص من جميع أنحاء العالم. هو يتحدث الإنجليزية والصينية مع السياح.

ذات يوم توقف القارب. ورأى شريف بعض الأطفال تلعب. وفجأة سقط طفل صغير في النهر! الطفل صرخ "رجاءا ساعدوني!" نادى شريف والده. رأى والد شريف الطفل ذات يوم توقف القارب. وقال "شكرا جيلدا!"

1. علم السياحة.



Phonics

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



&



① The letter "f" makes the / f / sound. (Voiceless)



foot قدم

face وجه

fan مروحة

fish سمكة

Pronunciation tips :

1. Touch your neck with your finger. ١- المس رقبتك بإصبعك.
2. Say "fish". Your neck doesn't move. ٢- قل "fish". رقبتك لا تتحرك (حنجرتك لا تهتز).

② The letter "v" makes the / v / sound. (Voiced)



cave كهف

van شاحنة صغيرة

living room حجرة معيشة

vegetables خضروات

Pronunciation tips :

1. Touch your neck with your finger. ١. المس رقبتك بأصبعك.
2. Say "van". Your neck vibrates during its pronunciation. ٢. رقبتك (حنجرتك) سوف تهتز أثناء نطق كلمة "van".

* Help your child distinguish between the / f / and / v / sounds when reading and writing.

- ساعد طفلك أن يميز بين أصوات / f / و / v / عند القراءة والكتابة.

* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.



Pop Quiz on phonics

1 Look and write the missing sound.

1.



li _ ing room

2.



_ egetables

3.



_ oot

4.



ca _ e

2 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



n v a

2.



h s f i

3.



c f a e

4.



n a f

3 Look and circle the picture with /f/ sound in green and the picture with /v/ sound in red.

4



5

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing sound in each word.

2. Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.

3. Ask your child to look and circle the picture with /f/ sound in green and picture with /v/ sound in red.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Ali lives on a boat in the winter.
2. Ali's parents work on tourist boats.
3. Ali doesn't go with his parents.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. important – others – is – Why – it – to help ?
.....
2. He – places – interesting – sees – many.
.....
3. swam – saved – child – Dad – and – the.
.....
4. decided – learn – He – to swim – to.
.....

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

meets – tourists – stores – travels

Ahmed likes the summer very much. His parents work on tourist boats. He (1) up and down the Nile with them. He sees many interesting places. He (2) people from all over the world. He speaks English and Chinese with the (3)

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.
3. Ask your child to read and complete the text with the words from the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص بالكلمات الموجودة في المربع.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Omar works on tourist boats. One day, the boat stopped and Omar saw some children playing. Suddenly, a small child fell into the river. The child shouted, "Please, help me !". Omar swam and saved the child.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The children were sleeping.
2. A small child fell into the river.
3. Omar saved the child.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What did Omar see ?

.....

5. What happened to the child ?

.....

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. I meet people from
2. Hany's dad works on
3. The small child fell
4. How did he
5. He speaks English with



B

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | a. a tourist boat. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | b. all over the world. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | c. help the small child ? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | d. in the summer. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | e. the tourists. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | f. into the river. |

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

they travel up and down the Nile

.....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويوصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

worker	عامل	check	يفحص / يتحقق
near	بالقرب من	kind	طيب / عطوف
every week	كل اسبوع	fresh	طازج

★ Listen and read. استمع وأقرأ.

The people who help us : the supermarket worker

الأشخاص الذين يساعدوننا : عامل السوبر ماركت

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ مه
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

This is Maggie. She works at the supermarket near my house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food.

Maggie checks the food is fresh. She helps us when we can't find something. She is very kind and happy.



هذه ماجي. تعمل في المتجر القريب من منزلي. أراها أنا وعائلتي كل أسبوع عندما نشترى الطعام. ماجي تتحقق من أن الطعام طازج. هي تساعدنا عندما لا يمكننا العثور على شيء ما. هي لطيفة جدًا وسعيدة.

Read and tick

(✓) or (x).

Learn

1. Maggie works at the hospital.

(x)

Practice

2. Maggie is kind and happy.

()

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.
- Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.
- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

يتم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد فقم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى:

A. cave

bathroom

balcony

living room

bazaar

B.

خضروات

انعطف يساراً

مكتب بريد

مركز تسوق

منزل عائم

My Reading

2 Read and circle.

اقرأ وضع دائرة.

My friend Sherif lives on a boat in the (winter – summer). His (pets – parents) work on tourist boats. He goes with them. They travel up and down the (school – Nile). He speaks English and Chinese with the (tourists – boats).

My Language

3 Choose the correct question word.

اختر كلمة الاستفهام الصحيحة.

1. (How many - How much) people are there ? – Twelve.
2. (Where – What) is the cat ? – Under the table.
3. (How – What) did you eat ? – A sandwich.
4. (What – Who) makes your bed ? – My mother.

4 Circle the correct preposition of place.

ضع دائرة حول حرف الجر الخاصة بالمكان الصحيح.

1. The lamp is (above – below) the table.
2. The supermarket is (behind – next) to the cinema.
3. I sat down (between – in front of) Ahmed and Omar.

My Writing

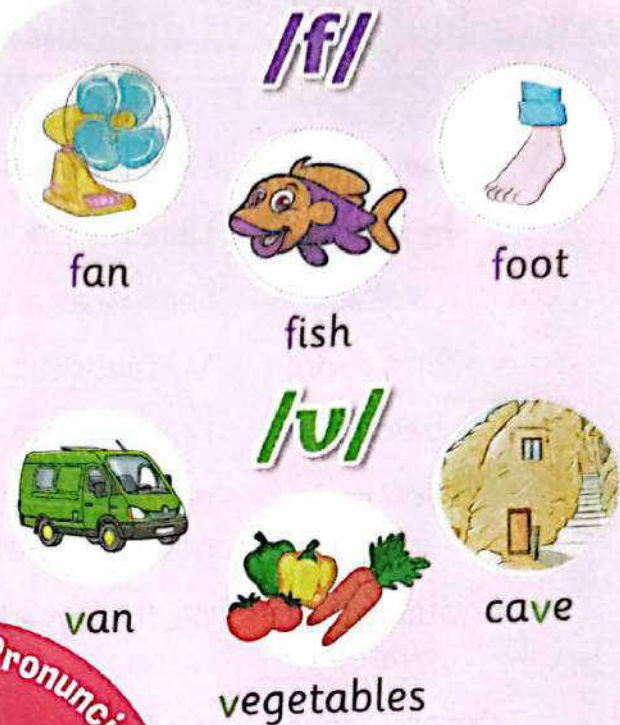
5 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

where is the post office

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on unit 4



Prepositions of place

- I live in a village **next to** the Nile.



- My house is **between** two tall trees.



Go straight ahead.



Turn left.



Turn right.



Take the second right.



It's on the corner.

- ساعد طفلك في مراجعة الوحدة الرابعة.

* Help your child review unit 4.



1. Reading & writing skills :

Sentences

Topic	Guiding words	
My home	apartment	I live in an apartment.
	bedroom	I like my bedroom.
	relax	I can relax and do my homework in my bedroom.
	living room	My favorite room is the living room with the balcony.
	balcony	I can see the whole street from the balcony.
Different houses	cave - rock - inside	We live in a cave. The rooms are in the rock. Inside, it's never too hot or too cold.
	houseboat - water	We live on a houseboat. It's small. I love living on water.
	desert - tent - cloth	We live in the desert. We live in a tent. It is made of cloth.
	house - rooms	I live in a house. It has many rooms. It's big.
A village	live - village	I live in a village near the Nile.
	house - family	I live in a house with my family.
	trees	There are tall trees next to my house.
	people - live	About 5,000 people live in my village.
A city	city	I live in a city called Hurghada.
	The Red Sea	It's on the Red Sea.
	beach - interesting	There is a beach. There are lots of interesting things to do.
	tourists - safaris	Tourists can go on safaris.
	houses - bazaars	It has beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.
A supermarket worker	supermarket	Maggie works at the supermarket.
	checks - food	She checks that the food is fresh.
	helps - find	She helps us when we can't find something.
	kind - happy	She is very kind and happy.

2. How to make a sentence:

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. very – is – town – big – Nader's
2. in – The – is – cave – the rock.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1		is	
2			

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. second – Take – right – the.
2. left – turn – Don't.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. in - lives – Who – Hurghada ?
2. your - school – is - Where ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1					
2				is	

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. like – Does – Mariam – living – Hurghada – in ?
2. station – a – there – Is – here ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1				
2	Is			

3. Writing skill :

عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متنوعة بنموذج

Where do you live ?

Town

- I live in Cairo / Luxor /
- I live in a/an (house / apartment).

Location

- My city / village is in the east / west / north / south of Egypt.

Places in your city

There is (a hospital) (next to , behind, between, in front of) the school.

Activities you can do

1. You can go swimming on the beach.
2. You can do many sports.
3. You can visit the Pyramids.
4. You can visit the temples.

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

Hurghada - east - beach - tourists

I live in Hurghada. It is in the east of Egypt. There are beautiful beaches in Hurghada. Tourists come to Hurghada. They go swimming and do many water sports.



Your turn دورك

tourists - come - Egypt - pyramids - bazaars

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



٢- تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 My favorite room

My favorite room is the living room with the balcony⁽¹⁾. I love the view from the balcony⁽²⁾. I can see the whole street⁽³⁾. I talk to my family and watch television in the living room⁽⁴⁾. For my sister, her bedroom is her favorite room⁽⁵⁾. She can relax and do her homework quietly⁽⁶⁾.

2 "My home"

I live in a house with my family⁽⁷⁾. It's very big⁽⁸⁾. There are three bedrooms in our house⁽⁹⁾. There are two bathrooms⁽¹⁰⁾. There is a big kitchen where my mom cooks food⁽¹¹⁾. There is a garden where I play with my brother and sister⁽¹²⁾.

3 "My village"

I live in a small, beautiful village in Aswan⁽¹³⁾. It is next to the Nile⁽¹⁴⁾. I live in a big house with my family⁽¹⁵⁾. I like our lovely house⁽¹⁶⁾. There are tall trees in front of our house⁽¹⁷⁾. My house is yellow⁽¹⁸⁾.

4 "Places in my city"

I live in a city⁽¹⁹⁾. There are many nice places in my city⁽²⁰⁾. There is a supermarket where I can buy food to eat⁽²¹⁾. My school is near my house⁽²²⁾. It's a place where I learn⁽²³⁾. There is also a hospital; I go there when I am sick⁽²⁴⁾.

General Exercises

on Unit 4

الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Noha works at the supermarket.
2. She sells clothes and shoes.
3. She is unkind.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. checks – Fatima – fresh – the – food – is.
2. My – works – brother – the – at – supermarket.
3. your – work – Where – sister – does ?

3 Read the passage and answer the questions.

My name is Amr. I'm ten years old. I love living in a house because it is big. My grandparents live with us. I can play outside with my brother and sister. On the weekend, we go to the park. I like to play with my friends there.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Amr is ten years old.
2. Amr loves living in a cave.
3. Amr likes to play with his friends outside.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where does Amr go on the weekend ?
5. Who does Amr play with at the park ?

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen to the text and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
3. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. My house is the sweet shop and the post office.
a. next b. between c. in front d. above
2. The is the place where I learn.
a. hospital b. office c. supermarket d. school
3. My friend loves the river. He lives on a
a. rock b. tent c. houseboat d. school

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| 1. I can relax in | • | <input type="checkbox"/> a. when I'm in the Sahara Desert. |
| 2. The school is next | • | <input type="checkbox"/> b. my bedroom. |
| 3. I go on safaris | • | <input type="checkbox"/> c. on a tourist boat. |
| 4. My parents work | • | <input type="checkbox"/> d. to the hospital. |
| | | <input type="checkbox"/> e. under the bed. |

6 Write a paragraph of about (4 – 6) sentences using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Your town

Guiding words :

- next to – between – school – hospital
- shopping mall



4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 to 6 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ - ٦ جمل عن الموضوع المعطى له مستخدماً الكلمات المساعدة.

GENERAL EXERCISES On Unit 4

Collected From Governorates Exams

بإت مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

- 1. My book is the table. I can't see it. (نموذج وزارة ٢٠٢٢)
a. next b. in front of c. under
- 2. My grandparents like to live in the desert. They live in a big (المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٢)
a. tent b. apartment c. houseboat
- 3. The hospital is to the school. I can get to it quickly. (بنى سويف - الفشن ٢٠٢٢)
a. front b. between c. next
- 4. My uncle lives on a He can see water everywhere. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢)
a. cave b. tent c. houseboat
- 5. I play computer games in the It's very comfortable there. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٢)
a. cave b. living room c. rock

2 Read and match (A) with (B). اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

A

- 1. I live in a city called Hurghada. (الاسكندرية - جمر ٢٠٢٢) •
- 2. Gana is a kind supermarket worker. (القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢٢) •
- 3. Which is your favorite room ? (المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٢) •
- 4. Some people live in the desert. (القاهرة - تبين ٢٠٢٢) •
- 5. The shopping mall is next to the supermarket. (كفر الشيخ - سيدي سالم ٢٠٢٢) •

B

- ☐ a. The living room.
- ☐ b. They live in tents.
- ☐ c. You can buy things from it.
- ☐ d. It is near the sea.
- ☐ e. She helps us when we can't find something.
- ☐ f. She helps when we play football.

Notes for parents

- 1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer from a , b or c.
- 2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

طلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
طلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list.

balcony – between – hospital – in front of

We live in a big house near the sea. We have a big
(1) We put flowers in it. Our house is (2)
the post office and the (3) We are a happy family.

(الشرقية - ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٢)

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Noura moved to a new apartment with her family. The new apartment is big and near Noura's school. It has two bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom. Noura's favorite room is the living room. She can play games and watch TV in it. There is a big balcony, too. Noura can see the street from the balcony.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Noura can see the street from the balcony.
2. The new apartment is small.
3. The new apartment has seven rooms.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What is Noura's favorite room ?

5. Who does Noura live with ?

(البحيرة - ابو حمص ٢٠٢٢)

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the given box.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات التي في المربع المعطاة له.

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the given questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له.

Stop here !

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
مجموعة من مختلف المناطق الأزهرية.

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose.

1. I live in a (town – city – village)
2. My house is between a yellow house and a house.
(red – brown – blue)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

room – organize – bedroom

Mom : Which is your favorite (1)..... ?

Hamza : It's my (2).....

Mom : Hamza, can you help me (3)..... the kitchen ?

Hamza : That sounds good, let's do it.

C. The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zahra loves animals.
2. Uncle Sami is a bus driver.

<input type="checkbox"/> T	<input type="checkbox"/> F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. I take a shower in the
a. dining room b. kitchen c. bathroom
2. I live a small town.
a. on b. in c. behind

Where do you work ?

أين تعمل ؟



• skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

للتقن
الوحدة

Aims of unit five :

In this unit I will

- listen, read, and write about workers in my community. - استمع، اقرأ، واكتب عن العاملين في مجتمعي.
- learn about electricity. - اتعلم عن الكهرباء.
- practice using this, that, these, those. - اتدرب على استخدام هذا/هذه، ذلك/تلك، هؤلاء / أولئك.
- practice word stress in two-syllable words. - اتدرب على النطق المشدد في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين.

الأنهاف العامة للوحدة الخامسة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف.....

- think and write about the pros and cons of different jobs. - افكر واكتب عن الإيجابيات والسلبيات للوظائف المختلفة.
- make a report about workers in my community. - اقوم بعمل تقرير عن العاملين في مجتمعي.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

Key vocabulary	jobs	الوظائف
electrician	كهربائي	plumber
mechanic	ميكانيكي	bus driver
builder	عامل بناء	mail carrier
garbage collector	جامع قمامة	garbage

سباك

سائق أتوبيس

ساعي البريد

قمامة

تلقينه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

electricity	كهرباء	letter	خطاب
faucet	صنبور	packages	طرود بريدية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

connect يوصل
 use يستخدم
 brush ينظف بالفرشاة
 fix يصلح
 deliver يوصل

Past

connected
 used
 brushed
 fixed
 delivered

Irregular

Present

take يأخذ
 keep يحافظ
 leave يترك

Past

took
 kept
 left

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- take away the garbage
- on time
- take a shower
- get to

يُخرج القمامة
 في الوقت المحدد
 يأخذ دُش
 يصل إلى

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها

• A broken faucet dripping once per second can waste more than 13,000 liters of water in a year.

يمكن للصنبور المكسور الذي يقطر مرة واحدة في الثانية أن يهدر أكثر من ١٣,٠٠٠ لتر من الماء في السنة.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look and write the missing letters.

1.



b _ _ _ der

2.



p _ _ m _ _ r

3.



me _ _ an _ _

4.



ele _ _ r _ _ ian

★ Look, listen and read. أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

How many people helped you live in your home ?

كم عدد الناس الذين ساعدوك لتعيش فى منزلك ؟

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

A builder made the walls⁽¹⁾ strong⁽²⁾ and safe⁽³⁾. An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights⁽⁴⁾, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer.

A plumber connected the pipes⁽⁵⁾ and faucets so you have water to take

a shower and brush your teeth. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage⁽⁶⁾, so you can keep your house nice and clean⁽⁷⁾.

A mail carrier delivers your letters⁽⁸⁾ and packages. But you also need help when you leave the house. You need a mechanic to fix the car or the bus driver to take you to school.



Check Vocabulary

- | | |
|---------------------|------------|
| (1) حوائط | (2) قوى |
| (3) آمن | (4) أضواء |
| (5) مواسير / أنابيب | (6) قمامة |
| (7) نظيف | (8) خطابات |

جعل عامل البناء الجدران قوية وأمنة. قام الكهربائي بتوصيل الكهرباء حتى يمكنك استخدام الأضواء ومشاهدة التلفزيون أو أداء واجبك المنزلي على الحاسوب. قام السباك بربط المواسير وصنابير المياه حتى يكون لديك مياه للاستحمام وغسل أسنانك. يقوم جامع القمامة بأخذ القمامة بعيدًا حتى تتمكن من الحفاظ على منزلك نظيفًا ونظيفًا. يقوم ساعي البريد بتسليم الرسائل والطرود الخاصة بك. لكنك تحتاج أيضًا إلى المساعدة عندما تغادر المنزل. أنت بحاجة إلى ميكانيكي لإصلاح السيارة أو سائق الحافلة لياخذك إلى المدرسة.

**Answer
the following
questions.**

Learn

1. Who made the place that you live in now ?
- A builder.

Practise

2. What does a plumber do ?

• اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة. • اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.
• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.
• Cairo produces around 20,000,000 tons of garbage every year. Garbage collectors work hard to collect it all.
• تنتج القاهرة حوالي ٢٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ طن من القمامة كل عام. جامعي القمامة يعملون بجد لجمع كل القمامة.

Dictation



بإتقان مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell

bus driver سائق حافلة

electrician كهربائي

mail carrier ساعي بريد

plumber سباك

garbage collector جامع قمامة

builder عامل بناء

mechanic ميكانيكي

wall حائط

electricity كهرباء

faucet صنوبر

letter خطاب

fix يصلح

pipe ماسورة

Complete

b _ s d _ iv _ r

ele _ tri _ ia _

m _ _ l ca _ _ ier

p _ um _ er

ga _ b _ ge co _ _ ect _ r

b _ ild _ r

me _ _ an _ c

wa _ _

el _ ctr _ c _ ty

f _ _ c _ t

le _ _ er

f _ x

p _ p _

Write

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ، ينهجى، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

1 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. A plumber connects •
2. An electrician connects •
3. A garbage collector takes away •
4. The bus driver •
5. A mail carrier delivers •

B

- ☐ a. takes us to school.
- ☐ b. the garbage.
- ☐ c. the pipes and faucets.
- ☐ d. the electricity.
- ☐ e. the cars.
- ☐ f. your letters and packages.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. helped – How many – people – you – in – home – your ?

2. We – have – to – need – a shower – water.

3 Choose the correct word from a , b , c or d.

1. A/An made the walls strong and safe.
a. electrician b. mail carrier c. builder d. plumber
2. We need a mechanic to the car or the bus.
a. connect b. fix c. use d. do
3. A drives to many different places.
a. bus driver b. garbage collector
c. plumber d. builder
4. A plumber connected the and faucets.
a. pipes b. walls c. electricity d. kitchens
5. A garbage collector takes all the garbage.
a. on b. of c. away d. off

1. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).

2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح ليكون جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.

3. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

All the jobs are important. There are many workers in our community to help us. A mail carrier delivers your letters and packages. A builder makes the walls strong and safe. An electrician connects the electricity, so you can use lights, watch TV or do your homework on a computer. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. A makes the walls strong and safe.
a. mail carrier b. garbage collector c. builder d. teacher
2. An electrician the electricity.
a. connects b. delivers c. makes d. keeps
3. A delivers your letters and packages.
a. driver b. mail carrier c. mechanic d. builder

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What do the workers do in our community ?
.....
5. Who takes away the garbage ?
.....

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Workers in our community

Guiding questions :

- What does a builder do ?
- What does an electrician do ?
- Who helps you to keep your house clean ?
- Who connects the pipes and faucets in your home?



Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

5. Ask your child to write a paragraph of four sentences using the given guiding elements.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

Key vocabulary

lightning	ظاهرة البرق	broken wire	سلك مقطوع (مكشوف)
electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	storm	عاصفة
socket	مقبس كهرباء	fire	حريق / نار
plug	قابس (فيشة)	ground	أرض

تنويه • **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها
• **Master your Vocabulary** يقص على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

dry	جاف	easily	بسهولة
wet	مبلل	flash	وميض (نور خاطف)
natural	طبيعي	advice	نصيحة
safely	بطريقة آمنة	light	ضوء

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

study	يدرس
practice	يتدرب
control	يتحكم
try	يحاول
touch	يلمس
waste	يهدر - يصيع
unplug	يبتزع - يفصل

Past

studied
practiced
controled
tried
touched
wasted
unplugged

Irregular

Present

become	يصبح
know	يعرف
put	يضع
burn	يحرق

Past

became
knew
put
burnt

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردها

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them

تصيف "ly" إلى الصفة لتكون ظرف

• **Note** : We add "ly" to an adjective to make an adverb
• **Ex.** : safe → safely

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• travel faster than 300,000 kilometers/second !

ينتقل بسرعة أكثر من ٣٠٠,٠٠٠ كيلو متر فى الثانية !

• get an electric shock

يصاب بصدمة كهربية

• through water

خلال الماء

• start a fire

يتسبب فى إشعال حريق

• make sure

يتأكد من

• waste electricity

يهدر الكهرباء

• save electricity

يوفر الكهرباء

• look like

يشبه

• turn off the lights

يطفئ الأضواء

• close to

بالقرب من

• go into the ground

يصل إلى الأرض



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

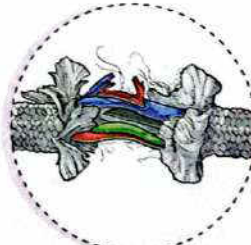
1 Look and write the missing letters.

1.



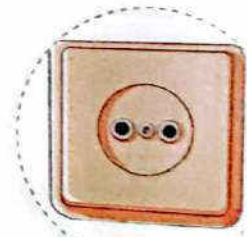
li _ _ t _ ing

2.



br _ k _ n w _ re

3.



s _ c _ et

2 Look and write the words.

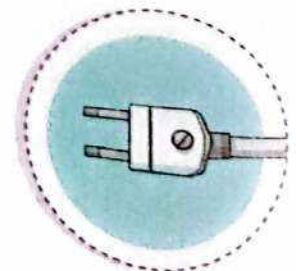
1.



2.



3.



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the missing letters in each word.
2. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the words.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الحروف الناقصة فى كل كلمة.
اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمات

★ Look, listen and read. أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Amira the electrician أميرة الكهرباء

This is Amira, she's an **electrician**⁽¹⁾. She **studied**⁽²⁾ and practiced for three years before she became an electrician. She knows how to work safely with electricity.



Interviewer : Tell us something interesting about electricity.

Amira : In a **storm**⁽³⁾ we sometimes see a **flash**⁽⁴⁾ of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1,000 families for a year !



Interviewer : Is electricity dangerous ?

Amira : Yes, very dangerous. If we get an **electric shock**⁽⁵⁾, we can't control our bodies. It can also **burn**⁽⁶⁾ us. Electricity is always trying to go into the ground. It travels easily through water and our bodies are 70% water.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) فنى كهرباء
- (2) دَرَسَ
- (3) عاصفة
- (4) وميض
- (5) صدمة كهربائية
- (6) تحرق

learn

kilometer

second كيلومتر (وحدة قياس)

ثانية (وحدة قياس الوقت)

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. What does Amira do ?
- She is an electrician.

Practise

2. Why is electricity dangerous ?

• Help your child look, listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويفهم النص.

هذه أميرة، تعمل كفنى كهرباء. درست وتدرّبت لمدة ثلاث سنوات قبل أن تصبح فنى كهرباء. هى تعلم كيف تتعامل بشكل آمن مع الكهرباء.
المحاور : أخبرينا بشيء مثير عن الكهرباء ؟
أميرة : أثناء وجود عاصفة أحياناً نرى وميض من الضوء. هذا الضوء به كمية كافية من الكهرباء لأكثر من ألف عائلة فى السنة.

أميرة : نعم، خطيرة جداً. إذا حدث لنا صدمة كهربية، لا يمكننا التحكم فى أجسادنا. إنها قادرة أيضاً على أن

تتحرقنا. الكهرباء دائماً تحاول أن تصل إلى الأرض. إنها تتنقل بسهولة عبر الماء وأجسادنا مكونة بنسبة ٧٠٪ من الماء.

How can we use electricity safely ?

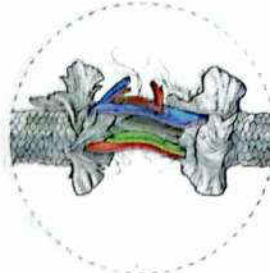
كيف يمكننا استخدام الكهرباء بطريقة آمنة ؟



1

Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.

لا تلمس أبدًا أي شيء كهربائي بأيادي مبللة.



2

Look, this is a broken wire - don't use it. You can get an electric shock or start a fire !

انظر، هذا سلك مقطوع (مكشوف) - لا تستخدمه. يمكن أن تصاب بصدمة كهربائية أو تتسبب في إشعال حريق !



3

Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

لا تضع أي شيء في المقبس الكهربائي، استخدم القابس (الفيشة) فقط.

How can we save electricity ?

كيف يمكننا توفير الكهرباء ؟

We often waste a lot of electricity. Remember these things :

غالبًا ما نهدر الكثير من الكهرباء. تذكر تلك الأشياء :

- When you leave a room, turn off the lights.

عندما تغادر الغرفة، اطفئ الأضواء.

- If you're not using your computer or television, unplug it.

إذا كنت لا تستخدم جهاز الحاسب الآلي أو التلفزيون، فم بفصله عن الكهرباء.

- Use natural light in the day.

استخدم الضوء الطبيعي (ضوء النهار) في فترة النهار.

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify some advice on using electricity safely.
- Help your child learn how we can save electricity.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على بعض النصائح لاستخدام الكهرباء بطريقة آمنة.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف بإمكاننا توفير الكهرباء.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

- In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of
a. electricity b. shock c. lightning
- Never touch anything electrical with _____ hands
a. wet b. dry c. clever
- When you leave a room, turn _____ the lights
a. off b. of c. on
- If you aren't using your computer, _____ it
a. unplug b. plug c. waste
- If we get an electric shock, we can't _____ our bodies
a. burn b. try c. control

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- often - of - electricity - waste - We - a lot
- plugs - can - How many - see - you ?
- light - the - Use - in - day - natural

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

unplug - turn off - natural - plug

We often waste a lot of electricity. We shouldn't waste a lot of electricity and we should save it. When you leave a room, (1) _____ the lights. If you're not using your computer or television, (2) _____ it. Use (3) _____ light in the day.

1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

2. Ask your child to reorder the words in the correct order to make correct sentences / questions

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. In a storm, we
2. Electricity travels easily
3. Never put anything into a socket,
4. When you leave a room,

B

- ☐ a. through water.
- ☐ b. only use plugs.
- ☐ c. turn off the lights.
- ☐ d. with wet hands.
- ☐ e. sometimes see a flash of lightning.

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

why is a broken wire dangerous

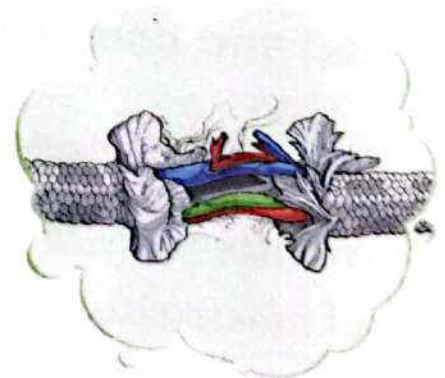
6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاوب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

How can we use electricity safely ?

Guiding words :

wet hands – broken wire – electric shock –
socket – plugs



Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
5. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.
6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of four sentences using the given guiding elements.

الطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B)
الطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.
الطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربعة جمل باستخدام العناصر الإرشادية المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

community	مجتمع	repair shop	ورشة إصلاحات
skills	مهارات	local home	منزل محلي (داخل المدينة)

تنويه ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

businesses	مؤسسات تجارية - شركات	disadvantages	عيوب
boring	ممل	hard hats	قبعات صلبة
different	مختلف	tools	أدوات
important	هام	truck	شاحنة صغيرة
letters	خطابات	interesting	شيق / ممتع
advantages	مميزات	workers	عمال
socket	مقبس	jobs	وظائف

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

help	يساعد
need	يحتاج
walk	يمشي / يسير
rain	تمطر

Past

helped
needed
walked
rained

Irregular

Present

feel	يشعر
get	يصل / يحصل على
break	يتعطل

Past

felt
got
broke

- have special skills لديهم مهارات خاصة
- make our city a nicer place to live يجعل من مدينتنا مكان أكثر جمالاً للعيش فيه
- get to work يصل إلى العمل
- make you feel good يمدحك شعور جيد
- get wet يبتل

★ Look, listen and read. أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

Workers in our community العمال في مجتمعتنا

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Do you like helping people? In our community⁽¹⁾ we can all help each other. Many of the people around us have special skills⁽²⁾ to help us.

Together, we help each other and make our city or village a nicer place to live. For example, a bus driver helps a builder to get to⁽³⁾ work⁽⁴⁾.



When the bus breaks⁽⁵⁾, the bus driver needs the mechanic to fix the bus. All the local homes⁽⁶⁾ and businesses⁽⁷⁾ need a mail carrier to deliver the packages⁽⁸⁾ and letters. We all need the garbage collector to take away our garbage⁽⁹⁾ and keep our streets clean.

We can all help each other. It's the right thing to do and it makes you feel good.

We all like different⁽¹⁰⁾ things. Some jobs are interesting⁽¹¹⁾ for some people, but they are boring for other people. All the jobs are very important.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) مجتمع
- (2) مهارات
- (3) يصل إلى
- (4) عمل
- (5) يتعطل
- (6) منازل محلية
- (7) أعمال تجارية - شركات
- (8) طرود بريدية
- (9) قمامة / مهملات
- (10) مختلف
- (11) شيق

Answer
the following
questions.

Learn

1. How does a bus driver help a builder?

- A bus driver helps a builder to get to work.

Practise

2. Why do we need the garbage collector?

Notes for parents

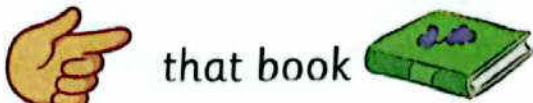
- Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص

هل نحب مساعدة الناس؟ في مجتمعتنا، يمكننا جميعاً مساعدة بعضنا البعض. كثير من الناس عن حولنا لديهم مهارات خاصة لمساعدتنا مثلاً، يساعد بعضنا البعض ويجعل مدينتنا أو قريتنا مكاناً أحسن للعيش فيه. على سبيل المثال، يساعد سائق الحافلة عامل البناء للوصول إلى العمل. عندما يتعطل الحافلة، يحتاج سائق الحافلة إلى ميكانيكي ليصلح الحافلة. جميع المنازل المحلية والشركات تحتاج إلى ساعي بريد لتوصيل الطرود والخطابات. نحن جميعاً نحتاج إلى جامع القمامة، يخلص من قمامتنا ويحافظ على نظافة شوارعنا. يمكننا جميعاً مساعدة بعضنا البعض إنه الشيء الجميل الذي يجب فعله وهذا يجعلنا نشعر بالراحة. نحن جميعاً نحب أشياء مختلفة. بعض الوظائف مثيرة للاهتمام لبعض الناس. لكنها تكون مهمة لأشخاص آخرين. كل الوظائف مهمة جداً.

Language

Demonstrative pronouns : ضمائر الإشارة :

Close إشارة للقريب	Far إشارة للبعيد
This	That
Singular nouns and uncountable nouns مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و الأسماء التي لا تعد	
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم مفرد بعيد.
 this book ex : This bus driver is taking me to school. 	 that book ex : That mail carrier is delivering letters. 
These	Those
Plural nouns مع الأسماء الجمع	
تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع قريب.	تستخدم للإشارة إلى اسم جمع بعيد.
 these books ex : These mechanics are repairing the car. 	 those books ex : Those builders are building the new hospital. 

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على ضمائر الإشارة واستخداماتهم .
 * Help your child identify the demonstrative pronouns and their uses.

★ Read and choose the correct demonstrative pronoun.

1. (This – These) car is very expensive.
2. (Those – That) mountains are very high.
3. (This – These) pens are blue.
4. You can paint (this – these) room.
5. (That – Those) shoes are very big.
6. (These – This) map will help us.
7. My father bought (those – that) toys for me.

احرص على اقتناء



EL-MORASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للمف الرابع الابتدائي

مراجعة نهائية

اسم يعنى التفوق



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read and choose the correct demonstrative pronoun according to the given sentences.

اسم من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار ضمير الإشارة الصحيح طبقاً للجمل المعطاة.

1 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

wet – healthy – clean – unhealthy

A garbage collector is outside all day. When it rains, the garbage collector gets (1) But the garbage collector is happy because he helps to (2) the city. He is (3) because he walks every day.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. help – people – you – Which – every day ?
.....

2. tools – are – These – the plumber's.
.....

3 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. are the builders' hard hats.

- a. These b. This c. That d. The

2. That mail carrier is delivering the

- a. garbage b. litter c. packages d. food

3. you like helping people ? – Yes, I do.

- a. Does b. Is c. Do d. Was

4. The bus driver needs the to fix the bus.

- a. builder b. garbage collector
c. plumber d. mechanic

5. We need the to keep our streets clean.

- a. bus driver b. electrician c. garbage collector d. builder

1. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

3. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

When the bus breaks, the bus driver needs the mechanic to fix it. We need a mail carrier to deliver the packages and letters. We need the garbage collector to take away our garbage and keep our streets clean.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. We need a mechanic to take away our garbage.
2. The bus driver needs the plumber to fix his bus.
3. The garbage collector keeps our streets clean.

T F

☐ ☐

☐ ☐

☐ ☐

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What does the mechanic do ?
5. Why do we need a mail carrier ?

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. That mail carrier •
2. These mechanics work in •
3. All jobs are •
4. Many people have •

B

- ☐ a. special skills.
- ☐ b. is delivering letters.
- ☐ c. very important.
- ☐ d. the repair shop.
- ☐ e. the garbage collector gets wet.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

that s the mail carrier's bicycle

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions
5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B)
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويكتب عن الأسئلة
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B)
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

Key vocabulary

screwdriver	مِفْكَ البراغى	patient	صبور
tape measure	شريط القياس	architect	مهندس معمارى
blocks	مكعبات	teacher	مُعلم / مُعلمة

تتويها Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

little	صغير (الحجم) - قليل	curious	فضولى - محب الاستطلاع
adult	شخص بالغ	radio	جهاز راديو
safety	أمان	top	أعلى / قمة
still	لا يزال / مازال	cell phone	هاتف محمول

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

carry	يحمل
open	يفتح
start	يبدأ
explain	يشرح/يفسر
experiment	يختبر/يجرب

Past

carried
opened
started
explained
experimented

Irregular

Present

put	يضع
make	يصنع

Past

put
made

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- call each other يتصل ببعضهم البعض
- English class حصة لغة إنجليزية

- get angry يغضب
- all the time طوال الوقت

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

☆ Listen, look and read. استمع، انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz

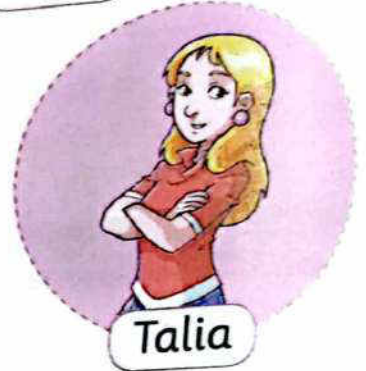
تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Three cousins

Lara, Talia, and Amir are **cousins**⁽¹⁾, but they are all very different. When Lara was a child, she loved to **experiment**⁽²⁾. She was very **curious**⁽³⁾. She always carried a **screwdriver**⁽⁴⁾ and she opened old radios, cell phones, and anything that had electricity. Her favorite question was "How does it work?" She learned about safety with electricity.

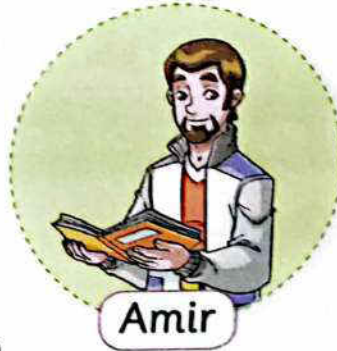


Lara



Talia

When Talia was a baby, she played with **blocks**⁽⁵⁾. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a **tape measure**⁽⁶⁾ and a pencil. Amir was always very **patient**⁽⁷⁾ and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can **get angry**⁽⁸⁾ at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, he helped, and he explained things all the time.



Amir

Today, Lara, Talia, and Amir are all **adults**⁽⁹⁾ but they still call each other when they need some help.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) أبناء العم/الخال
- (2) تختبر / تجرب
- (3) محب للاستطلاع
- (4) مفك البراغي
- (5) مكعبات
- (6) شريط قياس
- (7) صبور
- (8) غضب
- (9) أشخاص بالغين

أبناء العم الثلاث

لارا، تاليا وأمير أبناء العم/الخال، لكنهم مختلفين جدًا. عندما كانت لارا طفلة، كانت تحب أن تجرب وكانت محبة للاستطلاع. دائمًا كانت تحمل مفك البراغي وتفتح أجهزة الراديو القديمة. الهوائيات المحمولة وأي شيء به كهرباء كان سؤالها المفضل. كيف يعمل؟ تعلمت كيف تتعامل بأمان مع الكهرباء. عندما كانت تاليا طفلة رضية، كانت تلعب بالمكعبات. كانت تضع قطعه مكعبات فوق الأخرى. عندما أصبحت أكبر سنًا، بدأت في صنع الأشياء. لقد صنعت منزلًا صغيرًا للكلب الخاص بها وسرير لدمية أختها. كانت تحمل دائمًا شريط قياس وقلم رصاص. دائمًا كان أمير صبور جدًا وأحب مساعدة الناس. في بعض الأحيان، يغضب الأخوة الكبار من إخواتهم الصغار. لكن أمير لم يغضب أبدًا. كان يلعبه يساعد ويشرح أشياء طوال الوقت. اليوم، لارا، تاليا وأمير جميعهم أشخاص بالغين لكنهم لا يزالون يتصلون ببعضهم البعض عندما يحتاجون إلى بعض المساعدة.

Read and tick

(✓) or (X).

Learn

1. Talia made a bed for her sister's doll.

(✓)

Practise

2. Lara learned about safety with electricity.

()

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen, look at the pictures and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع، ينظر إلى الصور ويقرأ النص.

★ Read, learn and identify. اقرأ، تعلم وتعرف.

1



When the fan doesn't work, we call → an electrician.

عندما تتعطل المروحة، نتصل بالكهربائي.



2

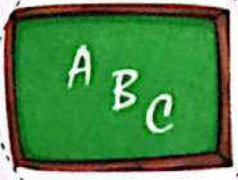


When we want to change something in our houses, we call → an architect.

عندما نريد تغيير شيئاً ما في منازلنا، نتصل بالمهندس المعماري.



3



When we don't understand something in our English class, we call → a teacher.

عندما لا نفهم شيئاً ما في حصة اللغة الإنجليزية الخاصة بنا، نتصل بالمعلم / المعلمة.



احرص على اقتناء



EL-MONASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للف الرابع الابتدائي

مراجعة نهائية

اسم يعني التفوق



• Help your child read the sentences, learn and identify the importance of some jobs.
• ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل، يتعلم ويتعرف على أهمية بعض الوظائف.

T	F

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

5 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Maged, Salma and Amal •
2. She likes helping •
3. When she was a baby, •
4. She made a little house •
5. Nada learned about safety •

B

- ☐ a. people.
- ☐ b. she played with blocks.
- ☐ c. for her dog.
- ☐ d. are all adults.
- ☐ e. with electricity.
- ☐ f. the lions.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

what job do you want to do

.....

7 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences using guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

A job you want to do

Guiding questions :

1. What's your favorite job?
 2. What job do you want to do ?
 3. Is it an important job ?
 4. What do you do in your job?
-
-
-
-



5. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.
7. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 sentences about the given topic using the guiding questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة انشائية من 4 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى له مستخدماً الأسئلة المساعدة.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

1 A syllable : is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.
مقطع لفظي : هو جزء من كلمة تحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد منفرد.

Two-syllable words

plumb er



build er



doc tor



driv er



den tist



teach er



Three-syllable words

me chan ic



bus driv er



ar chi tect



Four-syllable words

e lec tri cian



Notes for parents

1. Help your child identify the number of the syllables for each word.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على عدد المقاطع لكل كلمة.

2 A stressed syllable :

is a stressed part of a word or phrase. It is said more strongly than the rest of it.

المقاطع المشدد عليها عند النطق :

هي جزء من كلمة أو عبارة يتم نطقها بشكل أقوى من باقى أجزاء الكلمة

plumber a stressed syllable



mechanic a stressed syllable



doctor stressed syllable



أحرص على اقتناء



EL-MONASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

للمف الرابع الابتدائي

مراجعة نهائية

اسم يعنى التفوق



- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معنى المقطع المشدد.

2. Help your child identify the meaning of stressed syllable.



Pop Quiz on phonics

1 Circle the stressed syllable in the words.

1. builder

2. dentist

3. teacher

4. driver

5. doctor

6. plumber

2 Blend the syllables and write.

1. e + lec + tri + cian =

2. ar + chi + tect =

3. plumb + er =

4. build + er =

3 Listen and choose the correct stressed syllable.

1. (dentist or dentist)dentist.....

2. (plumber or plumber)

3. (architect or architect)

4. (mechanic or mechanic) ...mechanic.....

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to circle the stressed syllable in the words.

2. Ask your child to blend the syllables and write the words.

3. Ask your child to listen and choose the words that have the correct stressed syllable.

سب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول المقطع المشدد في الكلمات.

سب من طفلك أن يدمج المقاطع ويكتب الكلمات.

سب من طفلك أن يستمع ويختار الكلمات الصحيحة التي تحتوي على المقطع المشدد الصحيح.

4 Listen, read and choose the correct stressed syllable.

1. plumber

plumber

2. teacher

teacher

3. builder

builder

4. mechanic

mechanic

5. driver

driver

6. doctor

doctor

5 Read and complete.

one – Electrician – two – Dentist – three

1. "Builder" has syllables.
2. "....." has four syllables.
3. "Architect" has syllables.
4. "....." has two syllables.

4. Ask your child to listen, read the words and choose the word that has the correct stressed syllable.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ، يقرأ الكلمات ويختار الكلمة التي تحتوي على المقطع المشدد الصحيح.
5. Ask your child to read and complete the sentences using the words in the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

★ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A mathematician works with numbers and math problems.

عالم الرياضيات يعمل مع الأرقام والمشاكل الحسابية.

Division القسمة

- To share things equally, you can divide.

لمشاركة الأشياء بالتساوي، يمكنك التقسيم.

- 12 sweets are divided among 3 children. ١٢ قطعة حلوى تقسم على ٣ أطفال.

- How many sweets does each child get?

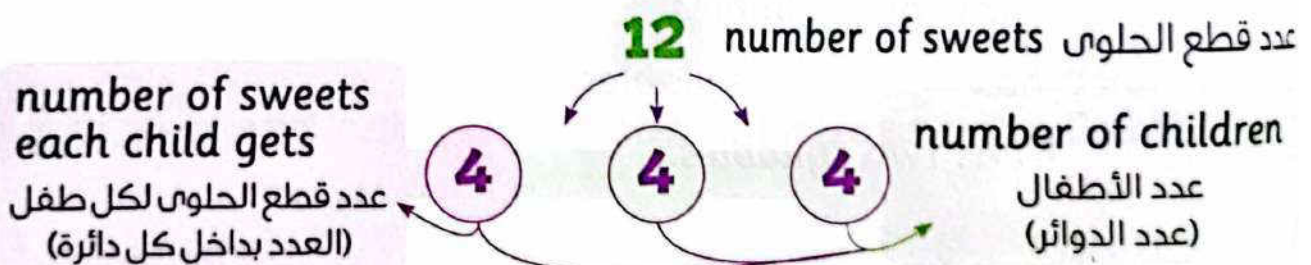
كم عدد قطع الحلوى التي سيحصل عليها كل طفل؟

Separate 12 sweets into 3 equal groups (number of children).

قسم الـ ١٢ قطعة حلوى إلى ٣ مجموعات متساوية (عدد الأطفال).

The division sentence : $12 \div 3 = 4$

Each child gets 4 sweets. كل طفل سيحصل على ٤ قطع حلويات.



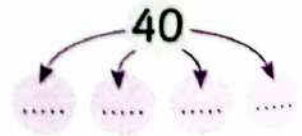
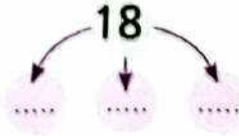
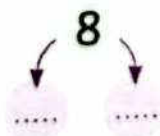
Pop Quiz on Math

★ Divide.

1. $8 \div 2 =$

2. $18 \div 3 =$

3. $40 \div 4 =$



Notes for parents

- Help your child read and learn how to divide.
- Ask your child to answer the given sums.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم كيف يقسم.
طلب من طفلك أن يقوم بالعمليات الحسابية المعطاة.

How to solve word problems on division.

كيفية حل المسائل الكلامية على القسمة.

PROBLEM :

Wael has 12 shells. He wants to put the same number of shells in each of 3 boxes.

How many shells will be in each box ?

وائل لديه ١٢ صدفه ويريد أن يضعها في ٣ صناديق بنفس التساوي كم عدد الصدف ستكون في كل صندوق ؟

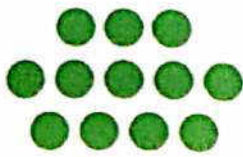


When you divide, you separate into equal groups.

للقيام بعملية القسمة، نقسم العدد إلى مجموعتين متساويتين

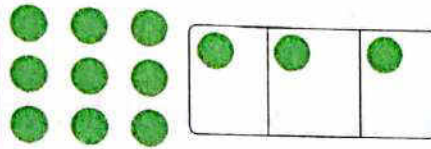
Step 1

Use 12 counters.



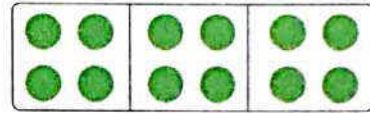
Step 2

Show 3 boxes. Place 1 counter in each box.



Step 3

Continue until all 12 counters are used.



$$12 \div 3 = 4$$

Number of shells in each group

So, there will be 4 shells in each box.

سوف يجد ٤ صدفات في كل صندوق.

• Note : + is a division symbol called divided by.

• ÷ هي علامة القسمة بمعنى مقسوم على.

★ Look and learn. انظر وتعلم.

So, What we do when we have missing numbers.

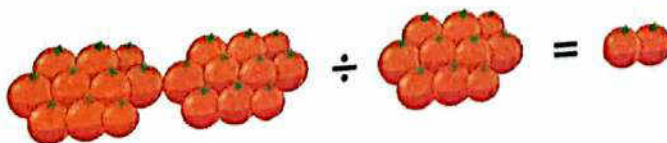
$$20 \div ?? = 2$$

$$20 \div 2 = 10$$

So, the missing number is 10.



Here's the equation : $20 \div 10 = 2$



- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف كيف يحل المسائل الكلامية على القسمة.

• Help your child learn how to solve word problems on division.

- ساعد طفلك أن يعرف ما يفعله / تفعله عندما يكون هناك أرقام ناقصة.

• Help your child know what he/she does when he/she has missing numbers.

1 Write the missing numbers.

1. $100 \div \dots = 2$

2. $100 \div 2 = \dots$

3. $100 \div 25 = \dots$

4. $100 \div \dots = 25$

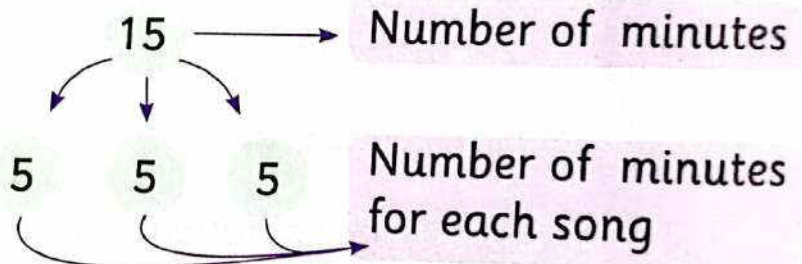
5. $100 \div \dots = 5$

6. $100 \div 5 = \dots$



2 Read, think and solve the word problems.

1. The band played for 15 minutes. Each song was 3 minutes long. How many songs did the band play?



The division sentence : $\dots \div \dots = \dots$

2. There are two hundred children in Grade 4. Today, they are going on a school trip. Each school bus carries 50 children. How many buses do they need?

The division sentence :

$\dots \div \dots = \dots$



Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to write the missing numbers.
2. Ask your child to read, think and solve the given word problems.

اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب الأرقام الناقصة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ، يفكر ويحل المسائل الكلامية المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

pros	إيجابيات - مزايا	backache	ألم بالظهر
cons	سلبيات - عيوب	outside	بالخارج

تلميح Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

weather	طقس	report	تقرير
heavy	ثقيل	work	عمل
everybody / everyone	كل شخص (الجميع)	good points	نقاط جيدة
bad points	نقاط سيئة	mail bag	حقبة البريد

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

talk	يتحدث
walk	يسير
start	يبدأ
like	يحب

Past

talked
walked
started
liked

Irregular

Present

tell	يخبر
think	يفكر
bring	يحضر/يجلب
wake up	يستيقظ
speak	يتحدث

Past

told
thought
brought
woke up
spoke

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- On one hand,
- On the other hand,
- think about
- wake up early
- get a lot of exercise
- give a backache

من ناحية،
من ناحية أخرى،
يفكر في
يستيقظ مبكرًا
يتدرب كثيرًا
يصيب بالآلم الظهر

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددهم

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

My name is Sherifa. In class this week, we're **talking**⁽¹⁾ about the good and bad things about different **jobs**⁽²⁾. My aunt is a mail carrier in America. I talked to her about her job and she told me some of the **pros**⁽³⁾ and **cons**⁽⁴⁾.



Pros and cons of being a **mail carrier**⁽⁵⁾ : what's it like to be a mail carrier ? There are some good and bad points about the job. On one hand, mail carriers are **outside**⁽⁶⁾ all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the **weather**⁽⁷⁾ is very hot or **wet**⁽⁸⁾ and cold. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise. They also speak to a lot of people. This is a nice part of the job. Everybody likes getting mail, so everyone likes meeting the mail carrier.

On the other hand, there are also some bad things to think about. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. The mail bag is very **heavy**⁽⁹⁾. It can give some mail carriers a **backache**⁽¹⁰⁾. Another bad thing is that they wake up very early. My aunt starts work at 6 o'clock in the morning.



- اسمي شريفة. في الفصل هذا الأسبوع، نحن نتحدث عن الأشياء الجيدة والسيئة حول الوظائف المختلفة. خالتي تعمل ساعية بريد في أمريكا. تحدثت إليها عن وظيفتها. وقد أخبرتنى بعض الإيجابيات والسلبيات. إيجابيات وسلبيات كونك ساعية بريد. كيف يبدو الأمر عندما تكون ساعية بريد ؟ يوجد بعض النقاط الجيدة والسيئة حول الوظيفة. من ناحية، ناقلات البريد موجودين في الخارج طوال اليوم. هذا رائع عندما يكون الطقس جيد ولكن ليس ممتعاً عندما يكون الطقس حاراً جداً أو رطباً وبارداً جداً. يسير ناقلون البريد طوال اليوم ويمارسون الكثير من التمارين. يتحدثون أيضاً إلى الكثير من الناس. هذا الجزء الجميل من الوظيفة. الجميع يحبون تلقي رسائل البريد لذلك كل شخص يحب مقابلة ساعية البريد. من ناحية أخرى يوجد أشياء ليست جيدة يجب التفكير فيها. كونك ساعية بريد ليست وظيفة سهلة. حقيبة رسائل البريد ثقيلة جداً. يمكن أن تُصيب بعض ناقلات البريد بالآلام الظهر. شيء سيء آخر هو أنهم يستيقظون مبكراً جداً. خالتي تبدأ العمل في تمام الساعة ٦ صباحاً.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) يتحدث
- (2) وظائف
- (3) إيجابيات
- (4) سلبيات
- (5) ساعية البريد
- (6) بالخارج
- (7) طقس
- (8) رطب/مبلل
- (9) ثقيل
- (10) ألم بالظهر

Read and choose
the correct
answer.

Learn

1. Mail carriers all day and get a lot of exercise.

- a. get b. walk c. start d. wake

Practise

2. The mail bag is very

- a. thin b. fat c. easy d. heavy

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Pros and cons of mail carrier's job

pros
إيجابيات

1. Mail carriers walk all day.
2. Mail carriers get a lot of exercise.
3. Mail carriers are outside and it's great when the weather is good.
4. Mail carriers speak to a lot of people.



Cons
سلبيات

1. Mail carriers are outside and it's not fun when the weather is very hot or wet and cold.
2. The mail bag is very heavy.
3. Mail carriers may get a backache.
4. Mail carriers wake up very early.



Activity

★ Look, think about pros and cons of being a garbage collector and write then **Color**.

Pros	Cons
takes away our garbage	



• ساعد طفلك أن يفكر ويعرف على مزايا وعيوب أن يكون شخص ساعي بريد.
• Help your child read and identify the pros and cons of being a mail carrier.

• ساعد طفلك أن ينظر يفكر حول أشياء إيجابية وسلبية لكونه جامع قمامة ويكتبهم لم ياون الصورة.
• Help your child look, think about the pros and cons of being a garbage collector and write them then color the picture.

★ Listen, read and identify. استمع، اقرأ وتعرف.

Workers who made our school



The builders

build the school.



The plumbers

connect the pipes so that we have water.



The electricians

connect electricity so that we can use lights.



The cleaners

keep the school clean.



The bus drivers

bring the children to school.



The garbage collectors

take away our garbage.



The mechanics

fix the cars and buses that bring the children to school.



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the sentences, then identify the task of each job.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الجمل، ثم يتعرف على مهمة كل وظيفة.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The builders build the school.
2. The electricians connect the pipes.
3. The plumbers connect electricity.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. fixes – the cars – buses – and – The mechanic.
2. brings – to – The bus driver – children – school – the.
3. you - helps – Who – at – home ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The builders the school.
a. clean b. build c. fix d. collect
2. The garbage collectors take away our
a. garbage b. pipes c. water d. food
3. The mail bag is very heavy. It can give some mail carriers
a
a. headache b. nosebleed c. stomachache d. backache
4. The keep the school clean.
a. mechanics b. plumbers c. cleaners d. doctors
5. Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of
a. exercise b. weather c. cars d. blocks

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و(F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.
3. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or wet and cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. Also the mail bag is very heavy. It can give the mail carrier a backache. They are very tired when they come back home.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The mail carrier's job is an easy job.
2. The mail carrier's job is not fun when the weather is hot or wet and cold.
3. The mail bag is very light.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Where are mail carriers all day ?

5. What do they do all day ?

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

the cleaners keep the school clean

6 Write a paragraph of Four (4) sentences of about EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding fact file.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding fact file.

Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job

Pros	Cons
get a lot of exercise	the mail bag is heavy
speak to a lot of people	wake up very early
walk all the day	get a backache



Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.
5. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.
6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of four sentences using the given guiding fact file.

سب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة
سب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للحملة المعطاة
سب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من أربع جمل باستخدام ملف الحقائق المساعد المعطى



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية. قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ●

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.

اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

- A. curious
mechanic
garbage
collector
electrician
connect

- B.
.....
.....
.....
.....

صنبور مياه
عامل بناء
سباك
ساعي البريد
يصلح

My Reading

2 Read and choose.

اقرأ واختر.

1. A (mechanic – builder) made the walls strong and safe.
2. A/An (electrician – plumber) connected the electricity.
3. A (plumber – mechanic) connected the pipes and faucets.
4. A (bus driver – mail carrier) delivers your letters and packages.

My Language

3 Read and tick (✓).

اقرأ وضع علامة (✓).

1. are the plumber's tools.
☐ This
☐ These
2. is the builder's hat.
☐ Those
☐ That
3. This mechanic fixing cars.
☐ is
☐ are
4. The mail carrier delivered package.
☐ these
☐ this

My Writing

4 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

where do you work

Review on unit 5



bus driver



electrician



builder



plumber



mail carrier



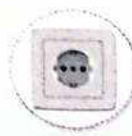
mechanic



garbage collector



lightning



socket



plug



tape measure



blocks



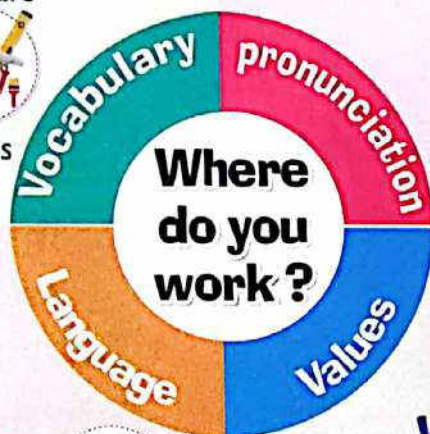
teacher



screwdriver



tools



Demonstrative pronouns

A. For near things.

This is the socket the electrician is fixing.



These are the plumbers' tools.



B. For far things.

That's the water dripping from the faucet.



Those are the builders' hard hats.



Two-syllable words



plumber



builder



dentist



doctor



teacher

Three-syllable words



mechanic



architect

Four-syllable words



electrician

Workers in our community

- We can all help each other.
- A bus driver helps a builder to get to work.
- A bus driver needs the mechanic to fix the bus when the bus breaks down.

Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 5.



1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
People who help us	builder - walls	A builder makes the walls strong and safe.
	electrician	An electrician connects the electricity.
	plumber - pipes	A plumber connects the pipes and faucets.
	garbage collector	A garbage collector takes away all the garbage.
	mechanic - fix	A mechanic fixes cars and buses.
	bus driver - school	A bus driver takes us to school.
Mail carrier	deliver - packages	Mail carriers deliver letters and packages.
	outside	Mail carriers are outside all day.
	walk - exercise	Mail carriers walk all day and get a lot of exercise.
	speak - people	They speak to a lot of people.
	bag - heavy - backache	The mail bag is very heavy. It can give some mail carriers a backache.
	wake up - early	They wake up very early.
The electricity	travel	Electricity travels very fast.
	dangerous	Electricity is very dangerous.
	shock - control	If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies.
	burn	Electricity can burn us.
	ground	Electricity is always trying to go into the ground.
	water	Electricity travels easily through water.
Use electricity safely	touch - wet	Never touch anything electrical with wet hands.
	broken wire	Don't use a broken wire. You can get an electric shock or start a fire!
	socket - plugs	Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.
Save electricity	turn off	When you leave a room, turn off the lights.
	unplug - television	If you're not using your computer or television, unplug it.
	natural - day	Use natural light in the day.

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جملة.

2. How to make a sentence :

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. is – an – She – electrician.

2. the – carrier's – bicycle – That – mail – is.

فاعل		فعل	باقي الجملة .
1			
2		is	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. anything – Never – electrical - hands – with wet – touch.

2. natural – the day - Use – in – light.

Don't / Never		مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة .
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. electricity – How – save – we – can ?

2. your home – to keep – helps – you – Who – clean ?

كلمة الاستفهام		فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال ؟
1	How				
2					

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

1. want – to – be – Do – an electrician – you ?

2. job – a – Is – this – dangerous ?

فعل مساعد		فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي السؤال ؟
1		you		
2				

3. Writing skill :

١. عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

Where do you work ?

Job

- He is a/an builder/bus driver/electrician/garbage collector/mail carrier/mechanic/plumber.

What they do

1. makes the walls strong and safe.
2. connects the electricity.
3. connects the pipes and faucets.
4. takes you to school.
5. delivers your letters and packages.

Where

- He works in houses/streets ... etc.

Opinion

1. It is my favourite job.
2. It's an interesting job.
3. This job is very hard.

Read and learn اقرأ وتعلم

bus driver - wake up - take - amazing job

He is a bus driver. He wakes up early. He works on a bus. He takes children to school. He helps people a lot. It's an amazing job.



Your turn دورك

mail carrier – hard – outside – early

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1

How workers help us every day

A bus driver helps a builder to get to work⁽¹⁾. The bus driver needs the mechanic to fix the bus⁽²⁾. All local homes and businesses need a mail carrier to deliver the packages and letters⁽³⁾. We need garbage collectors to take away our garbage⁽⁴⁾. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use light⁽⁵⁾. All these jobs are very important in our community.⁽⁶⁾

2

How can we save electricity

Electricity is very important in our life⁽⁷⁾. We often waste a lot of electricity⁽⁸⁾. To save electricity, we should turn off the lights when we leave a room⁽⁹⁾. If we are not using the computer, we should unplug it⁽¹⁰⁾. We should use natural light in the day⁽¹¹⁾. We should save electricity⁽¹²⁾.

3

Your favorite job

My favorite job is an electrician⁽¹³⁾. I want to be an electrician⁽¹⁴⁾. I love to experiment⁽¹⁵⁾. I always carry a screwdriver⁽¹⁶⁾. I check old radios, cell phones, and anything that has electricity⁽¹⁷⁾. I learn about safety with electricity⁽¹⁸⁾.

4

Electricity

It is not easy to become an electrician⁽¹⁹⁾. Electricity is very dangerous⁽²⁰⁾. If we get an electric shock, we can't control our bodies⁽²¹⁾. It can also burn us⁽²²⁾. Electricity is always trying to go into the ground⁽²³⁾. It travels easily through water and our bodies are 70% water⁽²⁴⁾.

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Talia played with blocks.
2. Talia made a big house for her little cat.
3. Talia is an architect now.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box.

explained – helping – excited – angry

Ahmed was always very patient. He likes (1)..... people. Sometimes, big brothers can get (2)..... at their little brothers, but Ahmed was never angry. He played, helped, and (3)..... things all the time.

3 Choose the correct word from a, b, c or d.

1. A mail carrier your letters and packages.
a. connects b. drives c. delivers d. puts
2. The takes you to school.
a. doctor b. builder c. plumber d. bus driver
3. She always carried a screwdriver. Now, she is a/an
a. doctor b. electrician c. teacher d. dentist
4. These the plumber's tools.
a. is b. was c. are d. does
5. The keeps the school clean.
a. plumber b. electrician c. builder d. cleaner

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

• **4 Read and match (A) with (B).**

A

1. A builder made
2. She loves to
3. Never put anything into a socket,
4. Those children
5. We can help

B

- ☐ a. experiment.
- ☐ b. only use plugs.
- ☐ c. are playing football.
- ☐ d. the walls strong and safe.
- ☐ e. each other.
- ☐ f. never angry.

• **5 Read the passage and answer the questions.**

Many of the people around us have special skills to help us. Together, we help each other. For example, a plumber connects the pipes and faucets, so you have water to have a shower and brush your teeth. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. An electrician connects the pipes and faucets.
2. We help each other.
3. A garbage collector helps you keep your house clean.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What does a plumber do ?

.....

5. Why do you use water ?

.....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
5. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويحيب عن الأسئلة.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. helping - Do - people - like - you ?

2. all - like - We - things - different.

3. the bus - the mechanic - When - breaks, - it - fixes.

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

what s amira's job

8 Write a paragraph of (4) sentences using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Mechanics

Guiding words :

- fix
- job
- bus
- repair shop



6. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
 7. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.
 8. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 - 6 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

الولايات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

- **Create**

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. These my father's tools. He uses them to fix things.

(النميا - النميا ٢٠٢٢)

3 Read and fill in the gaps with words from the list.

pipes - lights - builder - electrician

We have a big house. A (1)..... made the walls strong.
An (2)..... connected electricity so we can use
(3)..... . A plumber connected the (4)..... so we
can have water. We like our house very much. (سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٢)

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

My dad is an electrician. He connects electricity to houses. He helps people use lights, watch TV and use computers. Electricity is important but it can harm us, too. My dad knows to work safety with electricity. He uses a screwdriver and never touches electrical things with wet hands. He never puts anything in a socket.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Dad can connect electricity.
2. Dad uses a screwdriver to keep safe.
3. You can touch electrical things with wet hands.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Read and answer the following questions :

4. What is dad's job ?

5. Why does dad connect electricity to houses ? (قنا - قوص ٢٠٢٢)

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

who helps you keep your home clean

(الإسكندرية - العجمي ٢٠٢٢)

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the given box.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات التي في المربع المعطاة له.
4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the given questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة المعطاة له.
5. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.
اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم الصحيحة للجملة المعطاة.

Stop here !

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
مجمعة من مختلف المناطق الأزهرية

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose.

1. A made the walls strong.
(plumber – mechanic – builder)
2. A/An connected the electricity.
(electrician – plumber – builder)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

do – fixes – mechanic

Noha : Hello, Kareema. What's your favorite job ?

Kareema : Hello, Noha. My favorite job is a (1)

Noha : What does a mechanic (2) ?

Kareema : A mechanic (3) the cars.

C. The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Zein feeds goats on the farm.

T

F

☐☐

2. Uncle Sami has a taxi.

☐☐

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. A takes away our garbage to keep our street clean.

a. plumber

b. garbage collector

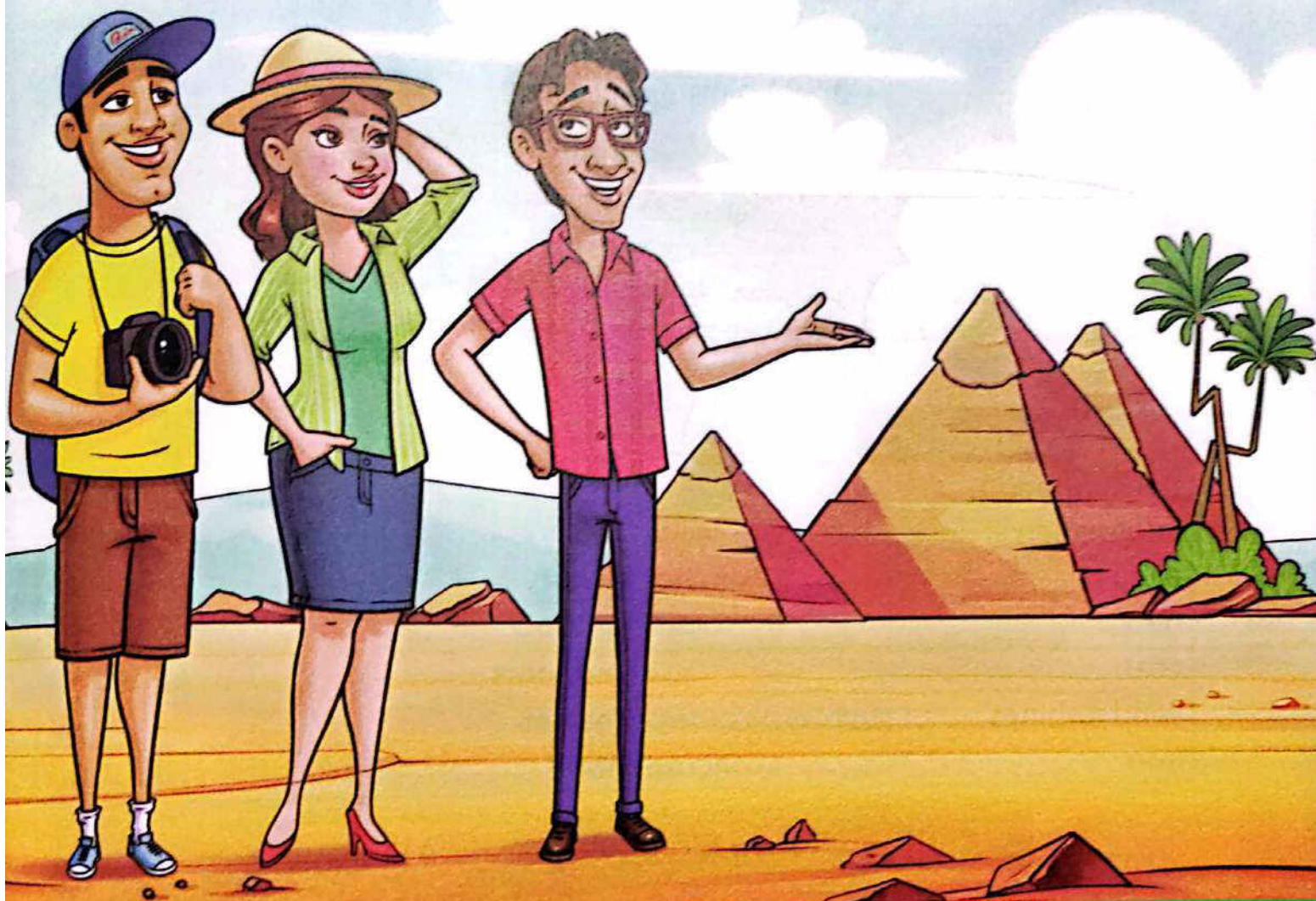
c. bus driver

2. The screwdriver the carpenter's tool.

a. are

b. is

c. were



• Skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

• استخدام كارت المعاصر للقراءة والكتابة.
• Test your skills في نهاية الوحدة.
• كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

للتقارن
الوحدة

Aims of unit six :

In this unit I will

- read and learn about more jobs.
- اقرأ وتعلم المزيد من الوظائف.
- explore what an industry is and the names of some common industries.
- استكشف ما هي الصناعة واسماء بعض الصناعات الشائعة.
- read a poem about some common jobs.
- اقرأ قصيدة عن بعض الوظائف الشائعة.
- read a story about respecting workers.
- اقرأ قصة عن احترام العمال.

الاهداف العامة للوحدة السادسة :

في هذه الوحدة سوف

- know about prime numbers.
- اتعلم عن الأرقام الأولية.
- distinguish and pronounce short vowel sounds.
- اميز وأنطق الأصوات المتحركة القصيرة.
- learn about words with the prefix (dis-).
- اتعلم عن الكلمات التي بها البادئة (dis-).
- write about a job you want to do.
- اكتب عن وظيفة تريد أن تعمل بها.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

energy	طاقة	engineer	مهندس
farming	زراعة	guide	مرشد سياحي
mining	تعدين	farmer	فلاح / مزارع
fishing	صيد سمك	librarian	أمين مكتبة
fisherman	صياد سمك	tourism industry	صناعة السياحة
geologist	عالم جيولوجي	education	التعليم

- **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ■ **قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.**

Extra vocabulary

transportation	وسائل نقل	tractor	جرار زراعي
information	معلومات	factory	مصنع
copper	معدن النحاس	history	تاريخ
nets	شباك	ground	أرض
coal	فحم	nutrients	عناصر غذائية
wind turbines	توربينات محركات الرياح	market	سوق
iron	معدن الحديد	hotel	فندق

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

pick يقطع / يلتقط
 explain يفسر
 study يذاكر
 turn يدور

Past

picked
 explained
 studied
 turned

Irregular

Present

catch يصطاد
 sell يبيع
 grow يزرع
 send يرسل

Past

caught
 sold
 grew
 sent

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددتهم.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- wake up early يستيقظ مبكرًا
- go out on a boat يخرج على متن قارب
- come back يعود
- all over the world فى كل أنحاء العالم
- look after يعتنى بـ
- make sure يتأكد
- tell lots of interesting stories يسرد الكثير من القصص المثيرة

- find the information they need يحصلوا على المعلومات التى يحتاجونها
- take metals out of the ground يستخرج المعادن من الأرض
- turn well تدور جيدًا
- make electricity يولد الكهرباء
- explain history يفسر التاريخ
- catch fish يصطاد سمك
- wave power طاقة الأمواج



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

1 Look, unscramble and write.

1.



n c e d u a t i o

2.



a c o l

3.



s m i o u r t

2 Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



4.



1. Ask your child to look at the pictures, unscramble the letters of the words then write them correctly.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويرتب حروف الكلمات ثم يكتبهم بشكل صحيح.
2. Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.
- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة.

What do you do ?

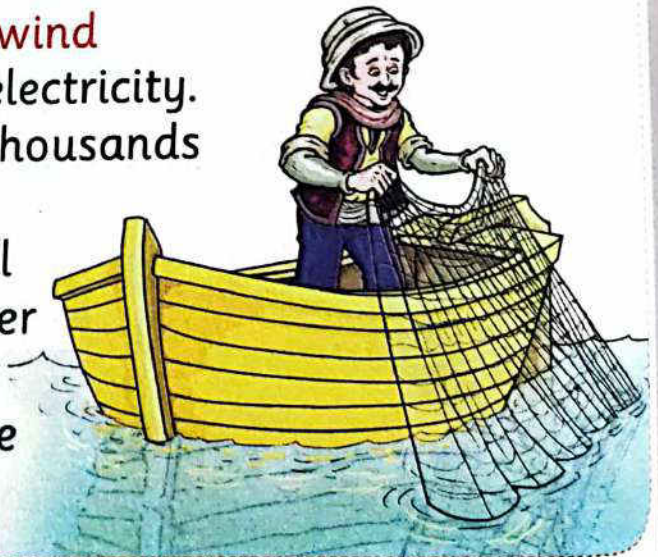
Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Check Vocabulary

- (1) قارب
- (2) سوق
- (3) مطاعم
- (4) يزرع
- (5) يعتنى بـ
- (6) عناصر غذائية
- (7) يقطع
- (8) سياحة
- (9) تاريخ
- (10) صخور
- (11) معادن
- (12) محركات الرياح
- (13) مكتبة
- (14) معلومات

1. I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day, I go out on my **boat**⁽¹⁾ and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the **market**⁽²⁾. My fish go to **restaurants**⁽³⁾ and homes all over the world.
2. I'm a farmer. I **grow**⁽⁴⁾ oranges. All year, I **look after**⁽⁵⁾ the trees and I give them water and **nutrients**⁽⁶⁾. Then, I **pick**⁽⁷⁾ the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the supermarket.
3. I'm a guide. I work in the **tourism**⁽⁸⁾ industry. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the **history**⁽⁹⁾ and tell the tourists lots of interesting stories.
4. I'm a geologist. I study the ground and the **rocks**⁽¹⁰⁾ under our feet. I study what is under the ground. I find special **metals**⁽¹¹⁾ and think how we can take the metals out of the ground.
5. I'm an engineer. I make sure the **wind turbines**⁽¹²⁾ turn well and make electricity. The electricity we make goes to thousands of homes.
6. I'm a librarian. I work in a school **library**⁽¹³⁾. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the **information**⁽¹⁴⁾ they need.



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

أنا صياد أستيقظ مبكرًا جدًا كل يوم، أخرج بقاربي واصطاد الأسماك. ثم بعد الظهر أعود وأبيع أسماكى فى السوق. أسماكى تذهب إلى المطاعم والمنازل حول العالم.
أنا فلاح أزرع البرتقال. أعتنى بالأشجار وأعطيهما الماء والعناصر الغذائية طوال العام. ثم أقطع الفاكهة. أرسل الكثير من الفاكهة للمصنع لصنع عصير البرتقال. أبيع أيضًا
عصير البرتقال الخاص بى فى السوبر ماركت.
أنا مرشد سياحى أعمل فى صناعة السياحة. بأتى الناس إلى بلدى ووظيفتى أن أشرح التاريخ وأخبر السياح بالكثير من القصص المثيرة.
أنا عالم جيولوجى أدرس الأرض والصخور تحت أقدامنا. أدرس ما هو تحت الأرض. أجد معادن مميزة وأفكر فى كيف يمكننا إخراج المعادن من الأرض.
أنا مهندس. أناكد من أن توربينات الرياح تعمل بشكل جيد وتولد الكهرباء. تذهب الكهرباء التى تولدها إلى آلاف المنازل.
أنا أخصية مكتبة أعمل فى مكتبة مدرسية. وظيفتى هى الاعتناء بكل الكتب. أشتري الكثير من الكتب الجديدة وأساعد الأطفال فى العثور على المعلومات التى يحتاجونها.

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Here are some of the things that belong to these industries .

mining



- iron
- copper
- coal
- gold

energy



- wind farm
- wave power
- electricity

farming



- animals
- tractor

fishing



- boats
- nets
- fish
- sea

tourism



- hotels
- transportation
- tourist
- pyramids

Pop Quiz on Reading

★ Read and write the name of each person's job.

- 1 The person who makes sure the wind turbines turn well and make electricity is called a / an



- 2 The person who finds special metals under the ground is called a / an

- 3 The person who tells the tourists lots of interesting stories is called a/an



• Help your child read and identify some of the things that belong to the given industries.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على بعض الأشياء التي تنتمي إلى الصناعات المعطاه له.

• Ask your child to write the name of each person's job according to the given sentences.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب اسم كل وظيفة شخص طبقاً للجمل المعطاة.

Dictation



من مهارة الكتابة استخدم كارت المعاصر من نهاية الكتاب

Read and spell

education	تعليم
energy	طاقة
farming	زراعة
fishing	صيد السمك
mining	تعددين
tourism	سياحة
pick	يقطف
fisherman	صياد
guide	مرشد سياحي
industry	صناعة
geologist	عالم جيولوجي
librarian	أمين مكتبة

Complete

e _ u _ ati _ n

e _ er _ y

f _ rm _ n _

fi _ i _ g

mi _ _ ng

t _ _ ri _ m

pi _ _

fi _ _ erm _ n

g _ _ de

i _ d _ st _ y

g _ _ lo _ ist

l _ br _ r _ an

Write

Notes for parents

- Help your child read, spell, complete and write the words.

فلنكن أن بقرا ، ينهجي ، يكمل ويكتب الكلمات.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. I go out on my boat and catch fish.
2. I sell my fish in the school.
3. I am an electrician.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. wake - every - I - day - up - early.
.....
2. after - looks - He - all the year - trees.
.....
3. with - turbines - works - Who - wind ?
.....
4. do - you - do - What ?
.....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. I'm a farmer.
2. I'm a librarian.
3. The geologist finds
4. The fisherman catches
5. The electricity goes to

B

- ☐ a. special metals.
- ☐ b. and sells fish.
- ☐ c. I look after the trees.
- ☐ d. thousands of homes.
- ☐ e. I catch fish.
- ☐ f. I work in a school library.

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / أسئلة صحيحة.
3. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A/An is a scientist.
a. geologist b. guide c. engineer d. fisherman
2. A helps us find the information in the library.
a. farmer b. fisherman c. guide d. librarian
3. The geologist takes the out of the ground.
a. metals b. fruit c. fish d. food
4. The fisherman fish.
a. catch b. catches c. catching d. to catch
5. The explains the history to the tourists.
a. engineer b. guide c. farmer d. teacher
6. The engineer makes sure the wind turn well and make electricity.
a. power b. farm c. turbines d. energy
7. A looks after the trees.
a. farmer b. fisherman c. guide d. librarian

5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

supermarket - factory - play - pick

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. I (1) the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the (2) to make orange juice. I also sell some of my oranges to the (3)

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

it's my job to explain the history

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct word.
5. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

سأطلب من طفلي أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.
سأطلب من طفلي أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في الصندوق.
سأطلب من طفلي أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.

Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

salary	راتب	cook	طباخ / طاه
government	دكومة	industries	صناعات
economy	اقتصاد	fish	سمك - يصطاد

تنويه ▪ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ▪ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ▪ قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

customer	زبون	road	طريق
traffic light	إشارة مرور	community	مجتمع
confusing	مربك / محير	company	شركة
transportation	وسائل النقل	local businesses	الأعمال المحلية

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

divide	يقسم
arrive	يصل
relax	يسترخى
deliver	يوصل
fix	يصلح

Past

divided
arrived
relaxed
delivered
fixed

Irregular

Present

think	يفكر
pay	يدفع
drive	يقود
buy	يشترى
come	يأتى
teach	يتعلم / يدرس

Past

thought
paid
drove
bought
came
taught

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- part of the country's economy
جزء من اقتصاد الدولة
- divided into industries...
مقسم إلى صناعات ...
- Let's think about ...
هيا نفكر فى ...
- fix problems
يحل المشكلات
- buy food from
يشترى الطعام من
- pay for things
يدفع ثمن الأشياء
- the whole country
الدولة بأكملها
- a collection of businesses
مجموعة من الأعمال التجارية
- make rules
يُعد القوانين
- get a salary
يتقاضى راتب
- in the wrong place
فى المكان الخطأ
- at a traffic light
فى إشارة مرور



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look and write the words.

1.



2.



3.



4.



★ Read and identify these definitions. اقرأ وتعرف على التعريفات الآتية.

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
economy الاقتصاد	the way a country makes and uses money طريقة الدولة فى صنع واستخدام النقود
industry الصناعة	a collection of businesses that work together مجموعة من المؤسسات التجارية تعمل معًا
salary راتب	money paid to people who work نقود يتم دفعها للأشخاص الذين يعملون
government الحكومة	the group of people who make rules for the country مجموعة من الأشخاص تضع القوانين للدولة

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.

سأب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة.

★ Listen and read. استمع وأقرأ.

Industry الصناعة

The things we make, buy, and sell are all part of the country's **economy** (1). Our economy is divided into **industries** (2), such as fishing, farming, **tourism** (3), etc. In every industry, there are thousands of people and many different jobs. For example, let's think about the tourism industry in Egypt. When tourists arrive in Egypt, they need a hotel and they need a bus or a taxi to take them to the hotel.

Many people work in the hotel. The hotel needs electricians and plumbers to **fix problems** (4), cooks to make food, and cleaners to keep the hotel clean. **Local businesses** (5) need the hotel, too. For example, the hotel buys food from farmers. Everything in the hotel comes from other businesses.



The hotel **pays** (6) a **salary** (7) to the workers. The workers use their salary to buy food, clothes, and for transportation. Some of their salary goes to the **government** (8) to pay for things like roads and schools. When we work, our salary helps our **community** (9) and the whole country.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع المفرد ونصوص
الاستماع



Check Vocabulary

- (1) اقتصاد
- (2) صناعات
- (3) السياحة
- (4) يحل المشكلات
- (5) الأعمال المحلية
- (6) يدفع
- (7) راتب
- (8) الحكومة
- (9) مجتمع

Answer the following questions.

Learn

1. Where do tourists go after arriving in Egypt?

- They go to the hotel.

Practise

2. Who makes food?

* Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

الأشياء التي نصنعها، نشتريها ونبيعها كلها جزء من اقتصاد البلد. اقتصادنا مقسم إلى صناعات مثل صيد الأسماك، الزراعة والسياحة، وما إلى ذلك. يوجد في كل صناعة آلاف الأشخاص والكثير من الوظائف المختلفة. على سبيل المثال، لنفكر في صناعة السياحة في مصر. عندما يصل السائحون إلى مصر يحتاجون إلى فندق ويحتاجون إلى حافلة أو سيارة أجرة لنقلهم إلى الفندق. كثير من الناس يعملون في الفندق. يحتاج الفندق إلى كهربائيين وسباكين لإصلاح المشاكل، طهاة لصنع الطعام وعاملين نظافة للحفاظ على الفندق نظيف. تحتاج الأعمال المحلية إلى الفندق أيضا. على سبيل المثال، يشتري الفندق الطعام من الفلاحين. كل شيء في الفندق يأتي من المؤسسات التجارية الأخرى. يدفع الفندق راتبا للعمال. يستخدم العمال راتبهم لشراء الطعام والملابس ووسائل المواصلات. يذهب بعض من رواتبهم إلى الحكومة لدفع ثمن أشياء مثل الطرق والمدارس. عندما نعمل، يساعد راتبنا مجتمعنا والدولة كلها.

1 We can form the noun referring to job by adding (-er) to the main verb.

يمكننا تكوين الاسم الذي يشير إلى وظيفة بإضافة (-er).

• teach → teacher
• clean → cleaner

• drive → driver
• build → builder
• work → worker

2 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

1
Affirmative statements
الجملة الخبرية
المثبتة

يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من :

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + **التصريف الأول للفعل**

ex. - I **buy** food at the supermarket.

التصريف الأول للفعل مضافاً له "s" أو "es" أو "ies" :

He / She / It + (inf.) + or
اسم مفرد (All) / مصدر الفعل

s → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s)
es → أما التي تنتهي بـ (sh, ch) يضاف لها (es)
(ss, x, o)

ex. - A fisherman **catches** fish.
- They **work** in a hospital.

الفعل المنتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف ساكن يضاف له (ies) مع حذف (y) :

ex. - She **carries** a bag.

الفعل الذي ينتهي بـ (y) قبله حرف متحرك (a-e-i-o-u) يضاف له (s) :

- He **plays** volleyball every Friday.

Notes for parents

- Help your child read and identify the verbs and the jobs.
- Help your child to know how to use present simple tense.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على الأفعال والوظائف.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط.

في زمن المضارع البسيط :
نستخدم بعدهم (I - You - We - They) ونسأل (do) وننفي (don't).
نستخدم بعدهم (He - She - It) ونسأل (does) وننفي (doesn't).
نستخدم بعدهم (es) ونسأل (does) وننفي (doesn't).

Usage الاستخدام

☆ يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث متكررة أو حقائق علمية.

- He **likes** reading books on holidays.
- The sun **rises** in the east.

2

Negative statements

الجملة الخبرية
المنفية

I /you /we /They اسم جمع + **don't** } (inf.)
He /she /It / اسم مفرد + **doesn't** } + مصدر الفعل

- ex. - Mechanics **don't** clean the streets.
- He **doesn't** work hard.

3

Interrogative

صيغة
الاستفهام

Yes / No Questions السؤال بمعنى هل ... ؟

Do + I /you /we / they اسم جمع } + inf. + باقي السؤال ؟
Does + he /she / it اسم مفرد } + مصدر الفعل

- ex. - Do the cleaners clean your streets ?
- Yes, they do.

Pop Quiz on Language

☆ Read and choose the correct answer.

1. Farmers the food.

☐ grows

☐ grow

2. A cleaner rooms.

☐ clean

☐ cleans

3. Dentists help animals.

☐ doesn't

☐ don't

4. An electrician electricity.

☐ connects

☐ connect

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

* Ask your child to read and choose the correct answer.

Farming

1. Farmers grow the food.
المزارعين يزرعون الطعام.
2. Drivers deliver the food.
السائقين يقوموا بتوصيل الطعام.
3. Supermarkets sell the food to customers.
الأسواق تبيع الطعام للزبائن.
4. Customers buy the food and then eat the food.
الزبائن تشتري الطعام ثم يأكلونه.



Energy

1. Engineers make the wind turbines.
يصنع المهندسين توربينات (محركات) الرياح.
2. The wind turbines make electricity.
تولد توربينات (محركات) الرياح الكهرباء.



Fishing

1. Fishermen catch the fish.
بصطاد الصيادون السمك.
2. The markets sell the fish to stores.
الأسواق تبيع السمك للمتاجر.



Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the sentences.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الجمل.

★ Look, read and number. انظر، اقرأ ورقم.

1. My teacher is very patient. She teaches math.

معلمتى صبورة جداً. هى تدرّس مادة الرياضيات.



2. That taxi driver drives very badly. He didn't stop at a traffic light.

سائق سيارة الأجرة يقود بشكل سيئ جداً. لم يقف فى إشارات المرور.



3. Those fishermen are in the wrong place. They can not fish there.

هؤلاء الصيادون فى المكان الخاطئ. لا يستطيعون صيد السمك هناك.



4. This is the builder who builds our house.

هذا هو عامل البناء الذى يبنى منزلنا.



5. He cleans very well. Thank the cleaner when you

see him. هو ينظف بشكل جيد جداً. أشكر عامل النظافة عندما تراه.



• Help your child look at the pictures, read and number each picture with its sentence.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويرقم كل صورة بجملتها.

Can you tell me why ... ?

Can you tell me why ...
Builders build,
But doctors don't doct. They help
sick people ?



Can you tell me why ...
Teachers teach,
But mechanics don't mechanic.
They fix cars ?



Can you tell me why ...
Fishermen fish,
But electricians don't electric.
They connect electricity ?



Can you tell me why ...
Drivers drive and
cleaners clean,
But dentists don't
dentist. They fix
teeth ?



Ah, but wait !
Garbage collectors collect garbage.
Yes, it's very confusing, but that's what makes
English great !



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the pictures, listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يستمع ويقرأ.

1 Listen and write T (true) or F (false).

- The tourists take a bus to a hotel.
- The tourists stay in comfortable rooms.
- Many people in the hotel help the tourists.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

- Cleaners keep the hotel
- The hotel pays
- Garbage collectors
- The taxi driver didn't stop
- The fisherman sells the fish

B

- a salary to the workers.
- She teaches math.
- at a traffic light.
- collect garbage.
- to stores.
- clean.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

cleaners - cooks - fix - drivers

Many people work in the hotel. The hotel needs electricians and plumbers to (1)..... problems, (2)..... to make food, and (3)..... to keep the hotel clean. Local businesses need the hotel, too. The hotel buys food from farmers. Everything in the hotel comes from other businesses.

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. A/An is the way a country makes and uses money.
a. salary b. economy c. industry
2. Fishermen fish.
a. catches b. catch c. is catching
3. Supermarkets the food to customers.
a. grow b. sell c. catch
4. A/An is money paid to people who work.
a. government b. industry c. salary
5. The wind turbines electricity.
a. make b. grow c. buy
6. That taxi driver very badly.
a. to drive b. drives c. drive

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentence.

1. work – people – a hotel – many – in – How ?
.....
2. teacher – My – very – is – patient.
.....
3. buys – from – food – The hotel – farmers.
.....
4. work – Why – people - do ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

how many people work in a hotel

.....

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct word.
5. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / اسئلة صحيحة.

اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

oil	زيت / بترول	wave energy	طاقة الأمواج
gas	غاز	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
coal	فحم	renewable resources	موارد متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	non-renewable resources	موارد غير متجددة

تنويه Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra vocabulary

wood	خشب	decision	قرار
pollution	تلوث	sunshine	أشعة الشمس
energy source	مصدر الطاقة	Ras Ghareb wind farm	محطة طاقة رياح في رأس غارب
Benban	منطقة بنبان (أسوان)		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

look	ينظر
cause	يسبب
plant	يزرع
look	ينظر

Past

looked
caused
planted
looked

Irregular

Present

cut down	يقطع
sell	يبيع
grow	يزرع
burn	يحرق / يحترق

Past

cut down
sold
grew
burned/burnt

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

• ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددتهم.

• Notice : Renewable : can grow again or never run out.

• قابل للتجديد : يمكن أن تنمو (تُنتج) مرة أخرى ولا تنفذ أبدًا.

- grow bigger and bigger يزداد حجمًا
- grow into ينمو ليصبح
- look out of the window ينظر من الشباك
- run out ينفذ
- cause pollution يسبب تلوث
- Don't worry. لا تقلق.
- need a big space يحتاج مساحة كبيرة
- cut down a tree يقطع شجرة

★ Look, listen and read. أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

Two mango trees شجرتان من المانجو

The beginning

Sara and Malak are sisters. Each⁽¹⁾ sister had a beautiful⁽²⁾ mango⁽³⁾ tree next to her house. Every year⁽⁴⁾, the sisters ate beautiful mangoes. Their children played under the trees.

The middle

One day, Malak said, "I don't need⁽⁵⁾ mangoes. I need money⁽⁶⁾. Let's cut down⁽⁷⁾ my tree. I can sell⁽⁸⁾ the wood⁽⁹⁾". She cut the tree and she sold the wood. Malak was happy.

Next year, Sara's mango tree grew bigger and bigger. It gave⁽¹⁰⁾ Sara more mangoes.

The end

Malak looked out of the window⁽¹¹⁾.

There was no mango tree. She had no mangoes and no more wood.

"Don't worry", said Sara. "Plant this mango seed⁽¹²⁾, and it will grow into a big tree".

Check Vocabulary

- (1) كل
- (2) جميل
- (3) فاكهة المانجو
- (4) كل سنة
- (5) يحتاج
- (6) أموال
- (7) يقطع
- (8) يبيع
- (9) خشب
- (10) أعطى
- (11) شباك
- (12) بذرة



Notes for parents

- Help your child look at the picture, listen to the text and read it.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع إلى النص ويقرأه.

سارة وملك أختان. كل أخت لديها شجرة مانجو جميلة بجانب بيتها. كل عام، كان الأخوات يأكلن المانجو الجميل. لعب أطفالهم تحت الأشجار. قالت ملك ذات يوم، "لست بحاجة إلى مانجو. أحتاج المال دعونا نقطع شجرتي. يمكنني بيع الخشب. قطعت الشجرة وباعت الخشب. كانت ملك سعيدة. في العام المقبل، نمت شجرة المانجو الخاصة بسارة بشكل أكبر وأكبر. أعطت سارة المزيد من المانجو. حظرت ملك من النافذة. لم يكن هناك شجرة مانجو. لم يكن لديها مانجو ولد مزيد من الخشب. قالت سارة: "لا تقلقي". "ارزعي بذرة المانجو هذه وسوف تنمو لتصبح شجرة كبيرة".

Different energy⁽¹⁾ resources

We are using more and more **electricity**⁽²⁾. We can make electricity from many different energy **resources**⁽³⁾. Today, 80% of electricity comes from **non-renewable**⁽⁴⁾ resources. These are coal, gas and oil.

Why is that a problem ?

We take **coal**⁽⁵⁾, **oil**⁽⁶⁾, and **gas**⁽⁷⁾ from the Earth, but we cannot make more. When we **burn**⁽⁸⁾ non-renewable resources to make electricity, we also cause **pollution**⁽⁹⁾.

How can we use renewable resources ?

Renewable energy⁽¹⁰⁾ sources are everywhere. We can make electricity from **wind**⁽¹¹⁾, **water**⁽¹²⁾, and the **sun**⁽¹³⁾. We do not need to burn these resources, so there is no pollution.

To make electricity from renewable energy sources, we need new **solar farms**⁽¹⁴⁾ and **wind farms**⁽¹⁵⁾. A solar farm needs a lot of **sunshine**⁽¹⁶⁾. A wind farm needs a big **space**⁽¹⁷⁾. To make wave energy, you need the **sea**⁽¹⁸⁾.

Pop Quiz

تدرب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

Check Vocabulary

- (1) طاقة
- (2) كهرباء
- (3) مصادر
- (4) غير متجددة
- (5) فحم
- (6) بترول
- (7) غاز طبيعي
- (8) يحرق
- (9) تلوث
- (10) طاقة متجددة
- (11) رياح
- (12) ماء
- (13) شمس
- (14) محطات الطاقة الشمسية
- (15) محطات طاقة الرياح
- (16) أشعة الشمس
- (17) مساحة
- (18) بحر

Answer the following questions.

Learn

1. What are the problems with coal, oil and gas ?

- They cause pollution.

Practise

2. What are renewable energy resources ?

• Help your child listen and read the text.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ النص.

مصادر الطاقة المختلفة

نحن نستخدم المزيد والمزيد من الكهرباء في وسعنا صنع الكهرباء من العديد من مصادر الطاقة المختلفة اليوم. ٨٠٪ من الكهرباء تأتي من مصادر غير متجددة. هم الفحم، الغاز الطبيعي والبنزين. لماذا هذا يعد مشكلة؟ نأخذ الفحم، والنفط، والغاز من الأرض. لكننا لا نستطيع صنع المزيد. عندما نحرق الموارد الغير متجددة لصنع الكهرباء، أيضا تسبب التلوث. كيف يمكننا استخدام الموارد المتجددة؟ مصادر الطاقة المتجددة في كل مكان. يمكننا أن نولد الكهرباء من الرياح، المياه والشمس. لسنا بحاجة لحرق تلك الموارد. لذلك لا يوجد تلوث يحتاج إلى محطات شمسية جديدة ومحطات رياح لتوليد الكهرباء من مصادر متجددة. تحتاج محطة الطاقة الشمسية إلى الكثير من أشعة الشمس. تحتاج محطة طاقة الرياح إلى مساحة كبيرة لتوليد طاقة الأمواج. أنت بحاجة إلى البحر.

★ Look and read the fact files. انظر واقرأ ملفات الحقائق.

Two renewable energy projects

Benban Solar Park

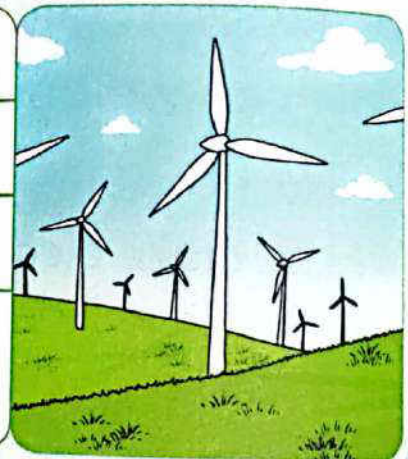
Where is it ?	Benban, Aswan, Egypt
How old is it ?	opened in 2018
How big is it ?	37.2 km ²
How much electricity can it make ?	3.8 TWh per year



★ Look, search and complete. انظر، ابحث وأكمل.

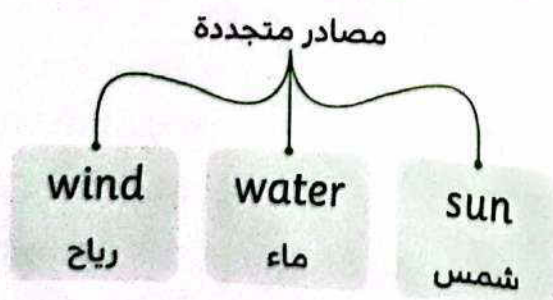
Ras Ghareb Wind Farm

Where is it ?	East of Cairo, Red Sea
How old is it ?	opened in 2019
How big is it ?	about 70 km ²
How much electricity can it make ?

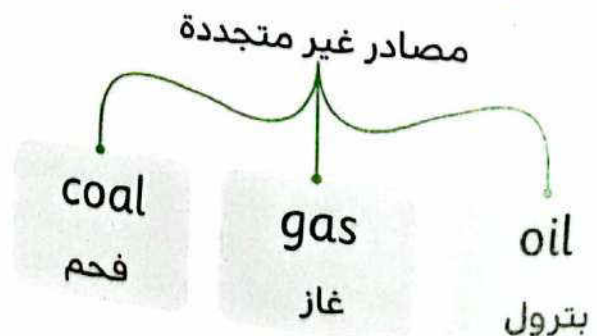


★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Renewable resources



Non-renewable resources



Notes for parents

- Help your child look, read and identify two renewable energy projects and complete the given fact files.
- Help your child read and identify the renewable and non-renewable sources.

• Note : TWh per year = tera watt per hour every year. ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ ويتعرف على مشروعين الطاقة المتجددة ويكمل ملف الحقائق المعطاة له.

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Benban Solar Park is in Luxor.
2. It opened in 2018.
3. It is 37.2 km².

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Renewable energy resources are everywhere. We can make electricity from wind, water, and the sun. We do not need to burn these resources, so there is no pollution.

To make electricity from renewable energy resources, we need new solar farms and wind farms. A solar farm needs a lot of sunshine. A wind farm needs a big space. To make wave energy, you need the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. Water and wind are resources of energy.
a. renewable b. non-renewable c. dirty d. terrible
2. A solar farm needs a lot of
a. space b. oil c. sea d. sunshine
3. Wave energy needs the
a. sea b. coal c. sun d. sky

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What resources of energy can we make electricity from ?
.....
5. What does a wind farm need ?
.....

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.
2. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- resources – we – can – How – renewable – use ?
- big – farm – space – A wind – needs – a.
- played – trees – They – under – the.

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
- Coal and oil are
 - Wind energy is
 - We get electricity
 - They cut down
 - Burning non-renewable resources causes

- B**
- from the sun.
 - non-renewable energy resources.
 - trees to sell the wood.
 - from plants.
 - pollution.
 - a renewable energy resource.

5 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

solar – sunshine – make – electricity

We can make electricity from wind, water and the sun.
To make (1)..... from renewable energy resources, we need
new (2)..... farms and wind farms. A solar farm needs
a lot of (3)..... . A wind farm needs a big space.

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

how big is it

Notes for parents

- Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences / questions.
- Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
- Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.
- Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

للمن من طفلك ان يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / اسئلة صحيحة.
للمن من طفلك ان يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
تخذها الكلمات في المربع.



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key Vocabulary

fresh	طازج	disappointed	محبط
fish van	شاحنة بيع الاسماك	engine	محرك

تنويه ■ Key Vocabulary هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها.
 ■ Master your Vocabulary يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية).
 ■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوي.

Extra Vocabulary

grandpa	جد	old	قديم
sound	صوت	hot	حار - ساخن
problem	مشكلة	village	قرية
surprised	مدهش	lovely	جميل - محبوب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

Past

look	ينظر	looked
change	يغير	changed
shout	يصرخ	shouted
want	يريد	wanted

Irregular

Present

Past

say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
drive	يقود	drove
hear	يسمع	heard

Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

- around the village
- It's a very simple problem.
- look at

حول القرية
 إنها مشكلة بسيطة جدًا.
 ينظر إلى

• Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويردد هم.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

★ Look and write the words.

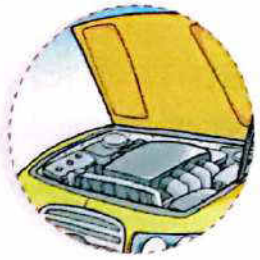
1.



2.



3.



انظر، استمع واقرأ.

★ Look, listen and read.

Fresh fish van شاحنة أسماك طازجة

The beginning

There's an old fisherman⁽¹⁾ in my village⁽²⁾. He drives around the village in an old van⁽³⁾. He likes his job. He has fun. He shouts, "Fish! Fresh fish! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".

The middle

One day, he was in front of my house. He couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed⁽⁴⁾. My mom saw the man. It was hot in the sun. She wanted to help.

Mom's dad (my grandpa) was a mechanic⁽⁵⁾. He taught⁽⁶⁾ her all about cars. She looked at the old van's engine⁽⁷⁾. "It is a very simple problem⁽⁸⁾. I can fix⁽⁹⁾ it", said Mom. The old fisherman was surprised.

The end

Then, we heard the sound of the engine. His van was fixed! "Thank you", the fisherman said. He gave Mom ten fresh fish.

هناك صياد عجوز في قريتي. يقود حول القرية بشاحنة قديمة. يحب عمله. ويستمتع. يصيح، "سمك! سمك طازج! آتعال واحصل على سمك طازج جميل." في يوماً ما، كان أمام منزلي. لم يستطع تشغيل شاحنته. كان حزينا ومحبط. أمي رأته الرجل. كان الجو حاراً في الشمس. أرادت المساعدة. كان والد أمي (جدي) ميكانيكياً. علمها كل شيء عن السيارات. نظرت إلى محرك الشاحنة القديمة. قالت أمي: "إنها مشكلة بسيطة للغاية. أستطيع إصلاحها". كان الصياد العجوز مندهشاً. ثم سمعنا صوت المحرك. تم إصلاح شاحنته! قال الصياد: "شكراً". لقد أعطى أمي عشرة أسماك طازجة.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) صياد سمك
- (2) قرية
- (3) شاحنة
- (4) مُحبط
- (5) ميكانيكي
- (6) عَلَّمَ
- (7) محرك
- (8) مشكلة بسيطة
- (9) يصلح

Notes for parents

• Ask your child to look at the pictures and write the correct word under each picture.

• Help your child look at the picture, listen and read the text.

اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور ويكتب الكلمة الصحيحة أسفل كل صورة.
ساعد طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصورة، يستمع ويقرأ النص.



Activity

Read the story and put it in the correct order.

1

The fisherman drives around the village in an old van.



Suddenly, he couldn't start his van. He was sad and disappointed.

He shouts, "Fish ! Fresh fish ! Come and get your lovely fresh fish".



She looked at the old van's engine. "It is a very simple problem. I can fix it," said Mom.

Mom saw the man and wanted to help.



Then, we heard the sound of the engine and his van was fixed !

"Thank you," the fisherman said. He gave her ten fresh fish.



اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القصة ويضعها في الترتيب الصحيح . Ask your child to read the story and put it in the correct order.

General Exercises

on Lesson 4
(part 1)

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. There's an old fisherman in my village.
2. The fisherman buys fish.
3. He doesn't like his job.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. The fisherman sells
 2. The fisherman's van
 3. My mom could fix
 4. There is a fisherman
 5. The fisherman was

- B**
- a. his job.
 - b. stopped.
 - c. in my village.
 - d. the van.
 - e. sad and disappointed.
 - f. lovely fish.

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

engine – van – fish – disappointed

The old fisherman drives around the village in an old van. One day, he couldn't start his (1) . He was sad and (2) . A mechanic looked at the old van's (3) . It was a simple problem. He fixed his van.

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

3. Ask your child to read and complete the text using the words in the box.

اسأل طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل النص مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

There's an old fisherman in my village. He drives around the village in an old car. He shouts, fish ! Fresh, fish ! The fisherman's car stopped in front of my house. He was very sad. My grandfather was a mechanic. He taught my father all about cars. My father fixed the car. The fisherman was happy and thanked my father. He gave my father ten fresh fish.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

T **F**

1. The fisherman's car stopped next to my house.
2. My grandfather fixed the car.
3. The fisherman gave my father ten fresh fish.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Why was the fisherman sad ?

5. Who taught the father all about cars ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – a fisherman – There – village – my – in.

2. get – and – Come – lovely – your – fish.

3. the – does – sell – What – man – old ?

6 Punctuate the following sentence.

a fisherman couldn't start his van

4. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

5. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / اسئلة صحيحة.

6. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجملة المعطاة.



Phonics

☆ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

short vowel sounds

The letter "u" makes the sound / ʌ / .

fun مرح | run يجرى



sun شمس

The letter "a" makes the sound / æ / .

sad حزين | man رجل | dad أب



van شاحنة صغيرة

The letter "i" makes the sound / ɪ / .

village قرية | fix يصلح | tin عبة صفيح



fish سمكة

The letter "e" makes the sound / e / .

fresh طازج | engine محرك | help يساعد



ten رقم عشرة

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen to the words that have short vowel sounds and repeat them.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التي تحتوي على أصوات قصيرة متحركة ويرددهم.



Pop Quiz on Phonics

★ Read and write the missing sound. اقرأ واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1.



s _ n

2.



v _ n

3.



f _ sh

4.



t _ n

Language

The prefix "dis-" means "not" (ليس) تعنى "البادئة" - "dis" (ليس)

dis + main verb = not + main verb

dis + like = dislike "not like something"

هو لا يحب الآيس كريم. He dislikes ice cream.

★ Read and learn.

obey → يطيع disobey يرفض الطاعة / يعصى

agree → يوافق disagree يرفض

appear → يظهر disappear يختفى

like → يحب dislike لا يحب / يكره

• Ask your child to read and write the missing sound.
• Help your child identify the meaning of prefix "dis-".

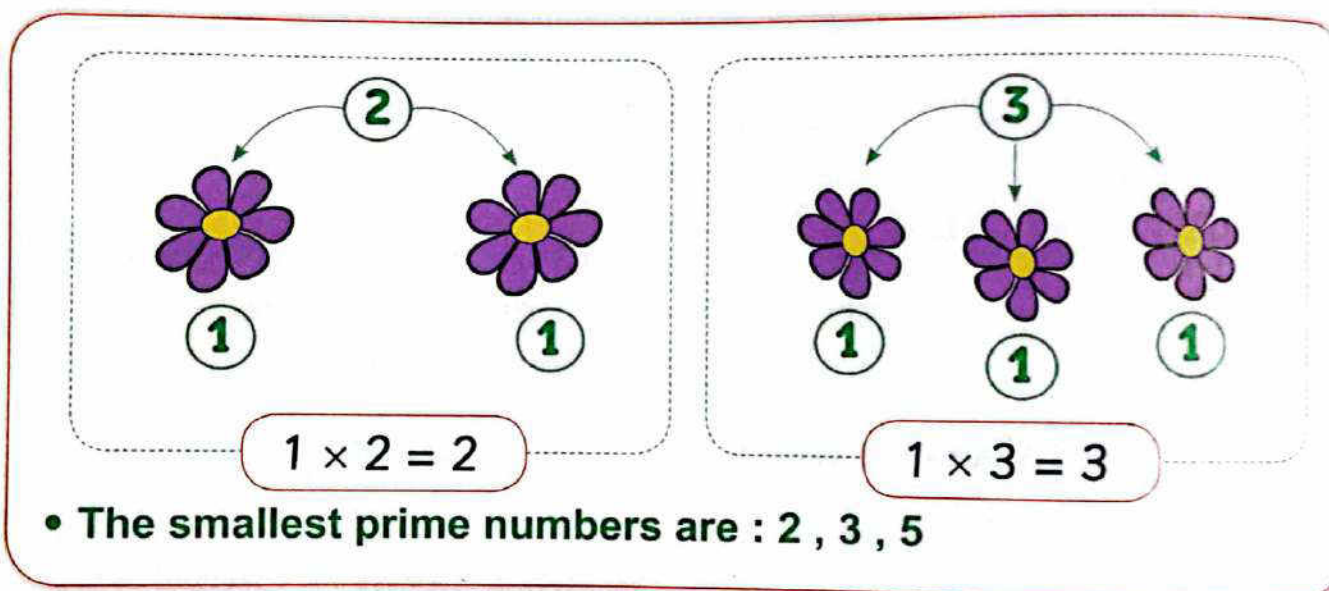
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب الصوت الناقص.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معنى البادئة "dis-".

★ Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

A **prime number** is a number you can divide only by itself and 1.
الرقم الأول هو رقم يمكنك قسمته على نفسه فقط وعلى رقم واحد.

Ex : 2 , 3 , 5 , 7 , 11 , 13 , 17 , 19 , 23 and 29 ... etc

★ Look and learn. انظر وتعلم.



Pop Quiz on Math

★ Read and answer.

★ What prime numbers are there between 20 and 30 ?

The prime numbers between 20 and 30 are
and

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the meaning of prime numbers.
- Ask your child to read the question and answer it.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على معنى الأرقام الأولية.
اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ السؤال ويجيب عنه.

1 Complete with "prime number" or "non-prime number".

1. 2 is 2. 4 is 3. 1 is
4. 5 is 5. 6 is 6. 7 is

2 Choose the correct answer.

1. is a prime number.
a. 16 b. 19 c. 21
2. The smallest prime number is
a. 0 b. 1 c. 2
3. isn't a prime number.
a. 1 b. 3 c. 5

3 Read and circle.

1. A prime number can be divided by any number.

true

false

2. Which number is not a prime number ?

2

6

5

3. Which number is a prime number ?

13

15

21

4. One is a prime number.

true

false



1. Ask your child to complete with prime number or non-prime number.

2. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

3. Ask your child to read and circle the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يكمل بكتابة "رقم أولي" أو "غير أولي"
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. A prime number can be divided by
a. 1 and itself only b. any number
2. Which of the following is a prime number ?
a. 4 b. 2
3. How many prime numbers are there between 10 and 20 ?
a. 5 b. 4
4. Number "13" is
a. prime b. not prime

5 Add. If the answer is a prime number, write it in red.

1. $27 + 10 =$

5. $20 + 21 =$

2. $30 + 3 =$

6. $6 + 5 =$

3. $4 + 3 =$

7. $1 + 2 =$

4. $20 + 9 =$

8. $70 + 9 =$

6 Read and tick (✓) if the number is a "prime number".

1. 4 ☐

2. 28 ☐

3. 11 ☐

4. 29 ☐

5. 7 ☐

6. 10 ☐

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
5. Ask your child to add the given sums and write the prime results in red.
6. Ask your child to read and tick (✓) if the number is a "prime number".



Vocabulary

★ Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Key vocabulary

encourage	يشجع	advice	نصيحة
litter	قمامة	surprising	مفاجئ - مدهش
respect	احترام	best	أفضل

تنويه ■ **Key Vocabulary** هي المفردات الأكثر أهمية المطلوب من الطالب إتقانها. ■ **Master your Vocabulary** يقضى على جميع مشاكل حفظ المفردات (الكراسة التفاعلية). ■ قاموس المعاصر اللغوى.

Extra vocabulary

polite	مehذب	older	أكبر سنًا
rich	ثري / غني	younger	أصغر سنًا
poor	فقير	kind	طيب / عطوف
carefully	بحرص	exciting	مثير / رائع
different	مختلف	question	سؤال

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present

ask	يسأل
encourage	يشجع
remember	يتذكر
respect	يحترم

Past

asked
encouraged
remembered
respected

Irregular

Present

think	يفكر
give	يعطى
learn	يتعلم
throw	يلقى

Past

thought
gave
learned/learnt
threw

* Help your child listen to the words and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات ويرددها.

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- think quickly يفكر بسرعة
- work for many hours يعمل لساعات طويلة
- ready to learn مستعد للتعلم
- show respect to... يظهر الاحترام لـ...
- get off the bus ينزل من الدتوبيس

★ Look, listen and read. أنظر، أستمع واقرأ.

Is teaching the best job in the world ?

هل التدريس أفضل وظيفة في العالم ؟

Pop Quiz

أترتب على ٢٢ من
قطع الفهم ونصوص
الاستماع

When people **ask**⁽¹⁾ me, "What do you want to do ?" I **answer**⁽²⁾ : "I want to be a **teacher**⁽³⁾. For me, it's the **best**⁽⁴⁾ job in the world.

For a teacher, every day is different.

Students⁽⁵⁾ always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think

quickly. They need to **encourage**⁽⁶⁾ their students.

They need to be very **patient**⁽⁷⁾. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting.

A teacher can **change**⁽⁸⁾ their students' **lives**⁽⁹⁾.

A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

Every adult remembers a special teacher. Ask your parents. Did they have a **favorite**⁽¹⁰⁾ teacher ? Why was that teacher special ?



Check Vocabulary

- (1) يسأل
- (2) يجيب
- (3) معلمة / معلم
- (4) أفضل
- (5) طلاب
- (6) يشجع
- (7) صبور
- (8) يغير
- (9) حيوات
- (10) مفضل

Answer
the following
questions.

- Learn** 1. What do teachers need to be ?
- They need to be very patient.
- Practise** 2. Is being a teacher a hard job ?

Notes for parents

- Help your child look, listen and read the text.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر، يستمع ويفهم النص.
ندعنا يسألني الناس "ماذا تريد أن تصبح؟" أنا أجيب : "أريد أن أصبح معلمة". إنها أفضل وظيفة في العالم بالنسبة لي. كل يوم مختلف بالنسبة للمعلم. يسأل الأطفال دائما أسئلة مفاجئة. يحتاج المعلمون للتفكير بسرعة. يحتاجوا لتشجيع طلابهم. يحتاجوا أن يكونوا صبورين للغاية. هم يعملون لساعات عديدة كل يوم. إنه عمل شاق. لكنه مثير. يستطيع المعلم تغيير حياة طلابه. المعلم الجيد مستعد دائما للتعليم. يدرس المعلمين طلابهم ولكن الطلاب أيضا يعلمون معلمهم. الجميع يحب الصف يعرف أشياء مختلفة. كل شخص بالغ يتذكر معلما مثيرا. أسأل والديك. هل كان لديهم معلم مفضل ؟ لماذا كان هذا المعلم مثيرا ؟

Language functions

To ask and answer about the job you want to do and why.

لتسأل وتجب عن الوظيفة التي تريد أن تعمل بها ولماذا.

What do you want to be ? Why ?

ماذا تريد أن تصبحين ؟ ولماذا ؟



I want to be a teacher
because every day is different
for teachers and they can
change their students' lives.

أريد أن أصبح معلمة لأن كل يوم
مختلف بالنسبة للمعلمين وهم
يستطيعون تغيير حياة طلابهم.



Is being a teacher a hard job ? Why ?

هل كونك مُعلمة وظيفة صعبة ؟ لماذا ؟

Yes, because they work for many hours
every day.

نعم، لأنهم يعملون لساعات طويلة كل يوم.



• Notes : "Why" - للسؤال عن سبب شيء ما نستخدم أداة الاستفهام
بمعنى "لماذا".

- لذكر سبب شيء ما نستخدم "Because" بمعنى لأن.

* Help your child ask and answer about the job he/she wants to do and mention the reasons.

- ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب عن الوظيفة التي يريد/تريد أن يعملها ويذكر الأسباب.

★ Listen and read. استمع وأقرأ.

إظهار الاحترام

Showing respect



I respect the cleaner.
I don't throw litter.

أحترم عامل النظافة. لا ألقى
القمامة (على الأرض).



I respect the teacher.
I listen to him carefully.
أحترم المعلم. أستمع إليه بحرص.

**I show
respect to
the people
around me.**

أظهر الاحترام
للناس من حولي.



I respect the bus
driver. I say thank you
when I get off the bus.

أحترم سائق الحافلة. أقول له
شكراً عندما أنزل من الحافلة.



I respect the dentist.
I listen to her advice.

أحترم طبيبة الأسنان. أستمع
لنصائحها.

When you show respect, you are kind and polite. You talk to someone in the same way you want them to talk to you. We show everyone respect. We show respect to younger people. We show respect to older people. We show respect to men and women. We show respect to rich and poor people.

Notes for parents

- Help your child listen and read the sentences.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5&6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

1. A good teacher is always ready to learn.
2. Students teach their parents.
3. Everyone in the class knows different things.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read the passage and answer the questions.

Being a teacher is not easy. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. A teacher can change their students' lives.

A. Choose the correct answer.

1. The teacher's job is not
a. surprising b. quiet c. easy d. difficult
2. Teachers need to think
a. quickly b. slowly c. safely d. easily
3. Teachers work for many every day.
a. seconds b. days c. weeks d. hours

B. Answer the following questions.

4. What can a teacher change ?

5. What do students always ask ?

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

2. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ القطعة ويجيب عن الأسئلة.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. Teachers need to •
 2. I show respect to •
 3. I say thank you when •
 4. A teacher can change •
 5. Is being a teacher •

- B**
- ☐ a. the people around me.
 - ☐ b. encourage their students.
 - ☐ c. I get off the bus.
 - ☐ d. a hard job ?
 - ☐ e. their students' lives.
 - ☐ f. to bad people.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. show – to – We – people – older – respect.
.....
2. a teacher – want – Do – be – you – to ?
.....
3. is – to learn – ready – teacher – always – A good.
.....
4. be - to – What - want - you - do ?
.....

5 Punctuate the following sentence.

i respect the bus driver

.....

Notes for parents

3. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

4. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/ questions.

5. Ask your child to punctuate the given sentence.

لمن من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

لمن من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / اسئلة صحيحة.

لمن من طفلك أن يضع علامات الترقيم للجمل المعطاة.



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Dictation

1 Read and write the meaning.
اقرأ وأكتب المعنى.

- A. librarian
guide
farmer
mining
economy

- B. عالم جيولوجي
..... مهندس
..... صياد سمك
..... السياحة
..... الطاقة الشمسية

My Reading

2 Read and circle.
اقرأ وضع دائرة.

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my (bus – boat) and catch (fish - birds). Then, in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the (museum – market). My fish go to (libraries – restaurants) and homes all over the world.

My Language

3 Read and complete with the correct form.

اقرأ وأكمل بالصيغة الصحيحة :

1. Farmers (to grow) the food.
2. That taxi driver (drive) very badly.
3. She (teach) math.
4. Fishermen (to catch) fish.
5. My (teach) is very patient.

My Writing

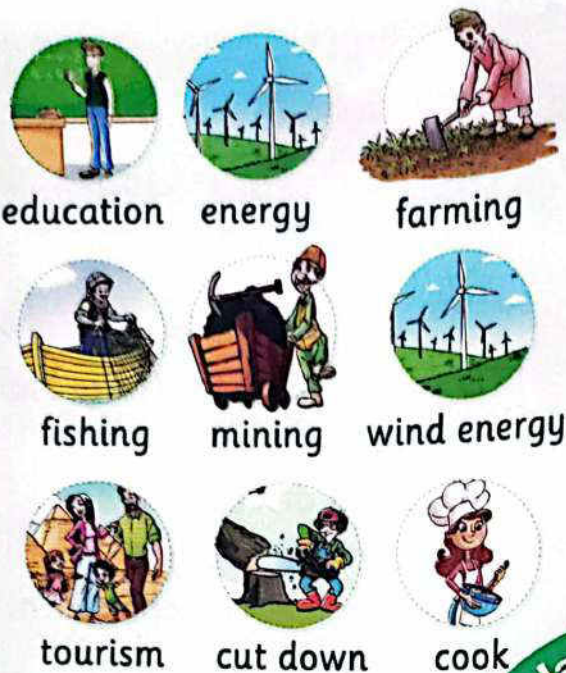
4 Punctuate the following sentence.

ضع علامات الترقيم للجملة الآتية.

i m a geologist



Review on unit 6



Short vowels

/æ/



van

/ɪ/



fish

/ʌ/

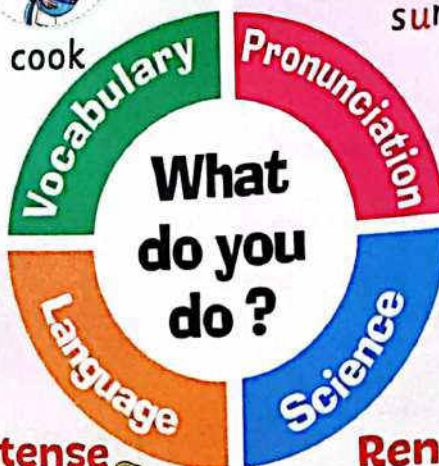


sun

/e/



ten



The Present simple tense

- Farmers **grow** the food.



- That taxi driver **drives** very badly.



- Supermarkets **sell** the food to customers.



- A cleaner **cleans** very well.



Renewable resources



wind



water



sun

Non-renewable resources



coal



gas



oil

Notes for parents

- Help your child review unit 6.



1. Reading & writing skills :

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
fisherman	fisherman - wake up	A fisherman wakes up very early every day.
	boat - catch	He goes out on a boat and catches fish.
	sell - market	He sells fish in the market.
farmer	grow	A farmer grows food.
	look after - water	He looks after the trees. He gives them water.
	pick	He picks fruit.
	sell - factory	He sells the fruit to the factories and the supermarkets.
guide	tourism	A guide works in the tourism industry.
	explain - history	He explains the history and tells the tourists lots of interesting stories.
geologist	ground - study	A geologist studies the ground and rocks.
	metal	He finds special metals.
engineer	wind turbines	An engineer makes sure the wind turbines turn well and make electricity.
librarian	library	A librarian works in the school library.
	look after - books	He looks after all the books.
	information	He helps children find the information they need.
teachers	encourage	Teachers need to encourage their students.
	patient	They need to be very patient.
	hours - work	They work for many hours every day.
	hard - exciting	It's hard work, but it's exciting.
	change - lives	A teacher can change their students' lives.

2. How to make a sentence :

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. fix – Mechanics – the cars – the buses – and .
2. ask – Students – surprising – always – questions.

	فاعل	فعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2		always ask	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. to – older – Show – respect – people.
2. throw – Don't – litter.

	Don't	مصدر الفعل	. باقى الجملة
1			
2			

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. do – What – do – you ?
2. want – be – to – you – do – What ?

	كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1					
2					

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. teaching – Is – job – best – the ?
2. different – resources – Are – energy – there ?

	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسى	? باقى السؤال
1				
2				

3. Writing skill :

١. عناصر تساعدك على تنظيم أفكارك للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة متبوعة بنموذج.

What do you do ?

Industry

- Our economy is divided into industries, such as fishing, farming, tourism, etc.

Your favorite job

I want to be a/an
It's the best job for me.
It's hard but fun.

Jobs

- In every industry, there are thousands of people and many different jobs.

Energy resources

There are many energy resources. Oil, coal and gas are non-renewable energy resources. Sun, wind and water are renewable energy resources.

Read and Learn اقرأ وتعلم

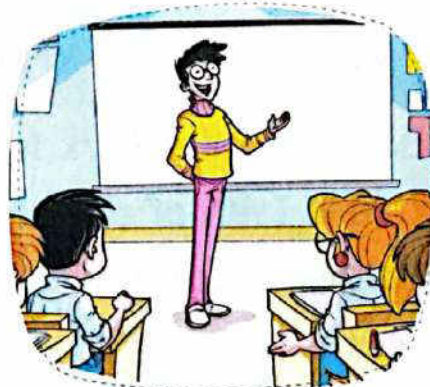
tourism - hotels - work - help

Tourism is very important.
Tourists need to stay in hotels.
They need a bus or a taxi to take them to hotels. Many people work in the tourism industry.
Tourism helps our country.



Your turn دورك

the best job - think - encourage - patient



1

A geologist

My dad is a geologist⁽¹⁾. He studies the ground and the rocks under our feet⁽²⁾. He studies what is under the ground⁽³⁾. He finds special metals⁽⁴⁾. He thinks how we can take the metals out of the ground⁽⁵⁾. This job is an interesting job⁽⁶⁾.

2

Fisherman's job

There's an old fisherman in my village⁽⁷⁾. He drives around the village⁽⁸⁾. He likes his job⁽⁹⁾. He has fun⁽¹⁰⁾. He sells fresh fish⁽¹¹⁾. My mom always buys fish from him⁽¹²⁾.

3

Tourism industry

The guide works in tourism industry⁽¹³⁾. People come to our country and the guide explains the history to the tourists⁽¹⁴⁾. He tells lots of interesting stories⁽¹⁵⁾. When tourists come to our country, they need a hotel to stay in⁽¹⁶⁾. They also need a bus or a taxi to take them to the hotel⁽¹⁷⁾. Tourism industry is a part of the country's economy⁽¹⁸⁾.

4

"Benban Solar Park"

Benban Solar Park is in Aswan⁽¹⁹⁾. It opened in 2018⁽²⁰⁾. It can make 3.8 TWh of electricity per year⁽²¹⁾. It is 37.2 km²⁽²²⁾. It's one of the largest solar power farm in the world⁽²³⁾. It's one of the renewable sources of energy⁽²⁴⁾.

General Exercises

on Unit 6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

T

F

1. My uncle looks after the trees.
2. My uncle grows apples.
3. He sends the fruit to the factory to make orange juice.

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. want – do – to – be – What – you ?

.....

2. The mango trees – are – their – next to – house.

.....

3 Read the passage and answer the questions.

I'm a fisherman. I wake up early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market. My fish go to restaurants and homes all over the world.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

T

F

1. I'm an engineer.
2. I sell my fish in the park.
3. I wake up early every day.

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

B. Answer the following questions.

4. Who catches fish ?

.....

5. When does the fisherman come back ?

.....

1. Ask your child to listen and write (T) for the right answer and (F) for the wrong answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يستمع ويكتب (T) للإجابة الصحيحة و (F) للإجابة الخاطئة.

2. Ask your child to reorder the words to make correct sentences/questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يعيد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل / اسئلة صحيحة.

3. Ask your child to read the passage and answer the questions.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الفقرة ويجيب على الأسئلة.

• **4** Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. An engineer makes sure the wind turbines •
2. A guide tells the tourists •
3. A geologist studies •
4. Supermarkets sell •

B

- ☐ a. a lot of interesting stories.
- ☐ b. helps the students at school.
- ☐ c. food to the customers.
- ☐ d. the ground and the rocks.
- ☐ e. turn well.

• **5** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1. A/An looks after all books.
a. geologist b. engineer c. librarian d. guide
- 2. I explain the history to the tourists. I work in the industry.
a. education b. mining c. farming d. tourism
- 3. My sister our tree to get wood.
a. cut down b. gave c. hurt d. heard
- 4. The boy is He didn't pass the test.
a. disliked b. disobeyed c. disagreed d. disappointed
- 5. I say thank you to the when I get off the bus.
a. driver b. dentist c. cleaner d. teacher

• **6** Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) - SIX(6) sentences using the following guiding words.

Renewable energy resources

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- wind farm
- electricity
- need
- no pollution
- big space
- clean



Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).
5. Ask your child to choose the correct word.
6. Ask your child to write a paragraph of 4 - 6 sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).
اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.
اطلب من طفلك أن يكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 - 6 جمل عن الموضوع المعطى له مستخدماً الكلمات الإرشادية.

GENERAL EXERCISES On Unit 6

Collected From Governorates Exams

تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b or c.

1. We like our We meet him every day at school.
a. teacher b. mechanic c. builder
(الإسكندرية - غرب ٢٠٢٢)
2. We respect the so much. He cleans our street every day.
a. mechanic b. garbage collector c. plumber
(المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٢)
3. Sarah saw a He was helping tourists.
a. farmer b. tourist guide c. plumber
4. A works in the sea or rivers. He catches a lot of fish.
a. plumber b. teacher c. fisherman
(الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٢)
5. Amr is a good He builds beautiful houses.
a. fisherman b. driver c. builder
(البحيرة - كبر حمادة ٢٠٢٢)

2 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. We like our teacher, Mrs Eman.
(سوهاج - سوهاج ٢٠٢٢)
2. Doctors help
(نموذج وزارة ٢٠٢٢)
3. A solar farm needs
(القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
4. A good teacher is always
(أسوان ٢٠٢٢)

B

- ☐ a. sick people.
- ☐ b. ready to learn.
- ☐ c. She explains us things all the time.
- ☐ d. a lot of sunshine.
- ☐ e. wind and water.

1. Ask your child to choose the correct word.
2. Ask your child to read and match column (A) with column (B).

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الكلمة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B).

3 Read, order and write.

1. farmers – do – What – grow ?

(الفلورية - طوخ ٢٠٢٢)

2. respect – I – dentist – the.

(بور سعيد ٢٠٢٢)

3. can – use – How – we – resources - renewable ?

(البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٢)

4 Read the passage and answer the questions.

I'm Hussein. My uncle is a fisherman. He has a boat. Every morning, he goes to the Nile to catch fish. In the afternoon, my uncle goes home with a lot of fish. He sells some fish at the market. He cooks some fish and eats his lunch. My uncle likes his job because it's fun. I want to be a fisherman when I grow up.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False).

- Hussein wants to be a mechanic.
- Hussein's uncle likes his job.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B. Read and answer the following questions.

- Where does Hussein's uncle go in the morning ?
- Why does Hussein's uncle like his job ?

(ادمياط - كفر سعد ٢٠٢٢)

5 Write a paragraph of Four sentences about :

(أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)

"The farmer"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- farm
- wake up
- grow
- animals



Notes for parents

- Ask your child to read and order the words to make correct sentences / questions.
- Ask your child to read the passage and answer the given questions.
- Ask your child to write a paragraph of four sentences about the given topic using the guiding words.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose.

1. I want to be a/an
(mechanic – engineer – electrician)
2. Electricity can be
(dangerous – safe – fast)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words below.

job - teacher - want

Ahmed : What do you (1) to be ?

Hamed : I want to be a (2)

Ahmed : Is being a teacher a hard (3) ?

Hamed : Yes. They work for many hours every day.

C. The Reader

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Zahra wants to be a software engineer.
2. The plumber helps Mr Sameh.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

D. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b or c.

1. A/An works in a school library.
a. engineer b. librarian c. geologist
2. A builder houses.
a. building b. build c. builds

Review on Unit 4

Vocabulary



kitchen



bedroom



living room



hospital



balcony



cave



apartment



office



houseboat



tent



shopping mall



post office

Phonics



van



cave



face



fan



vegetables



living room



fish



foot

Language

The tent is next to the car.



The house is between two tall trees.



- Go straight ahead.



- Turn right.



- Turn left.



Review on Unit 5

Vocabulary



bus driver



garbage collector



mail carrier



builder



cleaner



mechanic



electrician



tape measure



socket



plug



blocks



screwdriver



broken wire

Phonics

Two syllables



builder



dentist



doctor



teacher

Three syllables



architect



mechanic

Four syllables



electrician

Language

This is the car the mechanic is fixing.



That's the mail carrier's bicycle.



These are the plumber's tools.



Those are the builders' hard hats.



Review on Unit 6

Vocabulary



tourism



farmer



geologist



education



guide



librarian



engineer



fisherman

Phonics

short vowels



sun



van



fish



ten

Language

My teacher is very patient. He teaches math.



This is the builder who builds our house.



- She dislikes ice cream.
- The boy is disappointed. He didn't pass the test.
- A cleaner cleans very well.

In The Taxi With Uncle Sami

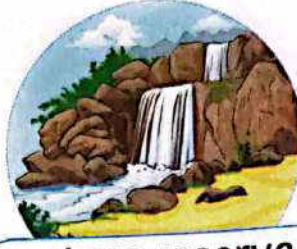
فى سيارة الأجرة مع العم سامى



By **Susannah Reed**
Illustrated By **Alice Larsson**



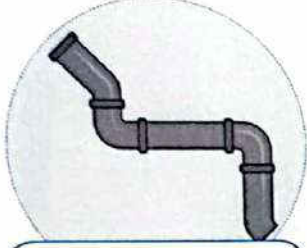
maize ذرة



nature reserve
محمية طبيعية



farm مزرعة



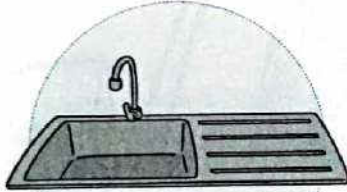
pipe ماسورة



plumber سباك



tractor جرار



sink حوض



apartment شقة سكنية



taxi driver سائق أجرة



vet طبيب بيطري



software engineer
مهندس برمجيات



puzzle لغز

★ The main idea of the story

الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة

- Zein can't decide what he wants to be when he's older.
زين لا يستطيع أن يقرر ماذا يريد أن يصبح عندما يكبر.
- All jobs are very important to our country.
كل الوظائف مهمة للغاية لبلدنا.

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the picture dictionary and the main idea of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على القاموس المصور والفكرة الرئيسية للقصة.



Story map

خريطة القصة



Fayez فايز



Basem باسم



Zahra زهرة



Zein زين



Dad الأب



Mom الأم

The characters

الشخصيات



Adel عادل



Mr Sameh
الأستاذ سامح



Mervat مرفت



Uncle Sami
العم سامي



Faten فاتن

The setting

المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

Time الوقت

Zein's &
Zahra's home
منزل زين وزهرة

nature
reserve
محمية
طبيعية

computer lab
معمل الكمبيوتر

farm
مزرعة

Mr
Sameh's
apartment
شقة أستاذ سامح

morning
النهار

night
الليل

Beginning بداية القصة



Middle منتصف القصة



End نهاية القصة



- Zahra and Zein are watching a nature program.
- Zahra wants to be a vet when she's older.
- Zein can't decide what he wants to be when he's older.

- Uncle Sami takes the children to see his friend Adel.
- Adel is a vet.
- Zahra and Zein help Adel with the crocodiles.
- Zein and Zahra visit the farm.

- Zein doesn't want to be a software engineer.
- The children help the plumber fix some pipes under a sink.
- Zein decides what he wants to be.

• Help your child know the characters and places in the story.

• ساعد طفلك أن يعرف الشخصيات والأماكن الموجودة في القصة.

• Help your child know what happened in the beginning, the middle and at the end of the story.

• ساعد طفلك على معرفة ما حدث في بداية ومنتصف ونهاية القصة.

What is Zein's problem ?

ما هي مشكلة زين ؟

He can't decide what he wants to be when he's older.

هو لا يستطيع أن يقرر ماذا يريد أن يصبح عندما يكبر.



What is Mom's idea ?

ما هي فكرة الأم ؟

Zahra and Zein go and stay with Uncle Sami and find out about his friends' jobs.

زهرة وزين يذهبوا ويقيموا عند العم سامي ليكتشفوا وظائف أصدقائه.



What jobs do Zein and Zahra try ?

ما هي الوظائف التي قام زين وزهرة بتجربتها ؟

They tried to be vets, farmers, software engineers and plumbers.

انهما يحاولان أن يكونا أطباء بيطريين، فلاحيين، مهندسين برمجيات وسباكين.



What is Zein's answer ?

ماذا كانت إجابة زين ؟

He wants to be a taxi driver like Uncle Sami because he goes to so many interesting places.

هو يريد أن يصبح سائق تاكسي مثل العم سامي لأنه يذهب إلى العديد من الأماكن الممتعة.



Notes for parents

- Help your child identify Zein's problem and how he solved it.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على مشكلة زين وكيف قام بحلها.

A nature program

برنامج عن الطبيعة

- Zahra and Zein are watching a nature program with their parents. It's a very interesting program. It's all about hippos.

زهرة وزين يشاهدان برنامجًا عن الطبيعة مع والديهم. إنه برنامج ممتع للغاية. إنه يخص كل شيء عن أفراس النهر.

Hippos are one of the most dangerous land animals in the world.

أفراس النهر هي من إحدى أكثر الحيوانات التي تعيش على اليابسة خطورة في العالم.

- 'I love animals', says Zahra. 'I want to be a vet when I'm older'. 'That's a great idea', says Mom. 'A vet is a very important job. What about you, Zein? Do you want to be a vet?' 'I don't think so', says Zein.

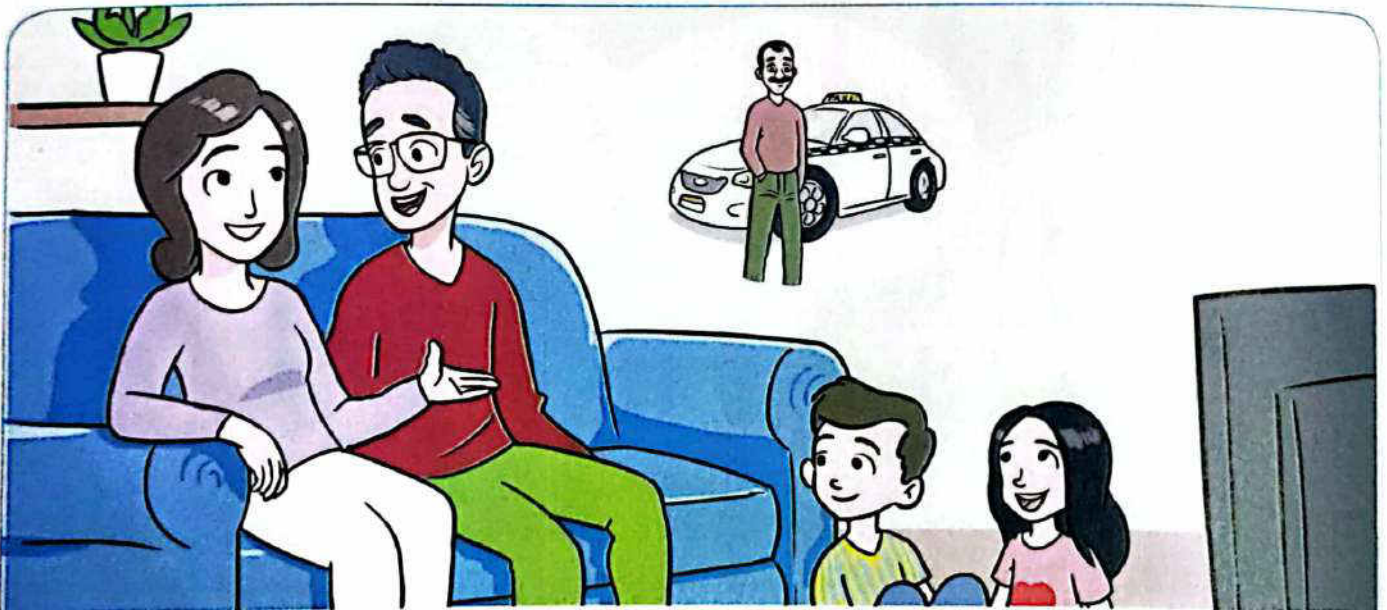
تقول زهرة: "أحب الحيوانات. أريد أن أصبح طبيبة بيطرية عندما أكبر". تقول الأم: "هذه فكرة رائعة. وظيفة الطبيب البيطري هامة للغاية. ماذا عنك يا زين؟ هل تريد أن تكون طبيب بيطري؟" يقول زين: "لا، لا أعتقد ذلك".

nature	طبيعة	program	برنامج	interesting	ممتع	hippo	فرس النهر	idea	فكرة
dangerous	خطير	vet	طبيب بيطري	job	وظيفة	older	أكبر سنًا	think	يعتقد



- 'What do you want to be, then ?' asks Dad. 'A doctor ?' 'Or a dentist ?' asks Mom. 'I don't know', says Zein. I just can't **decide** !'

• يسأل الأب : "ماذا تريد أن تكون إذن ؟" تسأل الأم : "طبيب ؟ أو طبيب أسنان ؟".
يقول زين : "لا أعرف ، أنا فقط لا أستطيع أن أقرر !"



- 'I know,' says Mom. 'Why don't you both go and stay with Uncle Sami? He has lots of friends. You can find out about their jobs. Then you can **decide**, Zein'. 'That's a great idea,' says Dad.

• تقول الأم : "أعلم، لماذا لا تذهبا معًا وتمكثا مع العم سامي ؟ لديه العديد من الأصدقاء.
يمكنكم معرفة المزيد عن وظائفهم. ثم يمكنك أن تقرر يا زين. " يقول الأب : " هذه فكرة رائعة."

doctor	طبيب	dentist	طبيب أسنان	decide	يقرر	both	كلاهما / معًا
stay	يمكث	find out	يكتشف / يعرف	great	رائع	lots of	كثير من

Activities on "The beginning"

1 Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

dentist - vet - program



1. I'm watching a nature about hippos.
2. I want to be a

2 Read and put (✓) or (X). اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X).

1. Zahra wants to be a vet. ☐
2. Zein can decide what he wants to be. ☐
3. Hippos are one of the least dangerous land animals in the world. ☐
4. Zahra and Zein are watching a nature program. ☐

3 Read and circle. اقرأ وضع دائرة.

1. (Cats - Hippos) are one of the most dangerous land animals in the world.
2. Zahra wants to be a (dentist - vet).
3. Zein (can't decide - can decide) what he wants to be.

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures, read the sentences and complete them with the correct word.

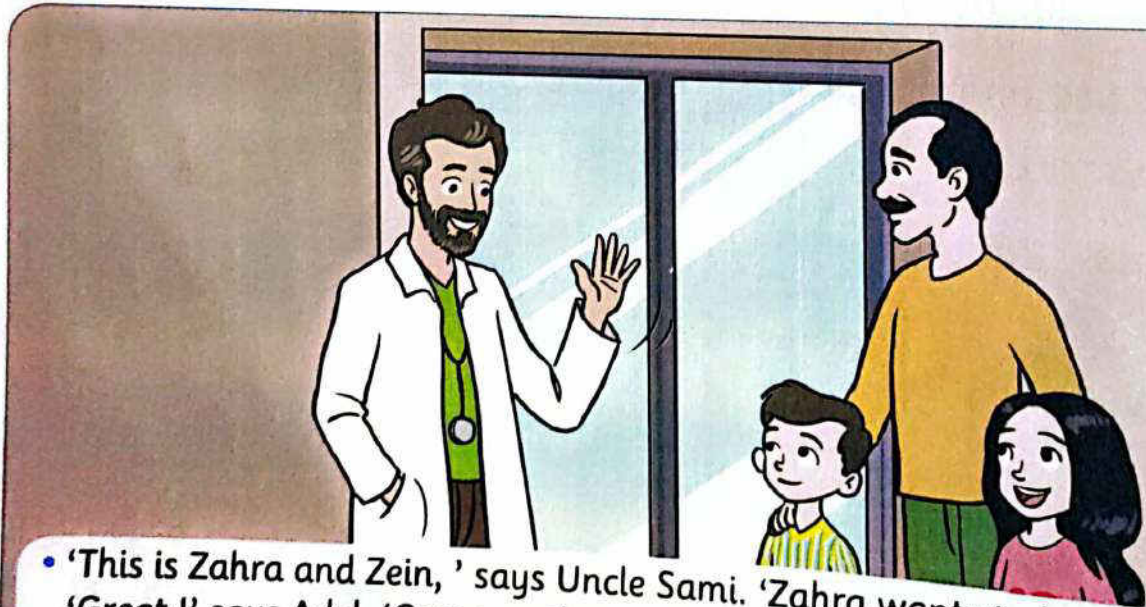
2. Ask your child to read the sentences and put (✓) or (X) according to the story events.

3. Ask your child to read and circle the correct word.

☆ Who is Uncle Sami ? من هو العم سامى ؟



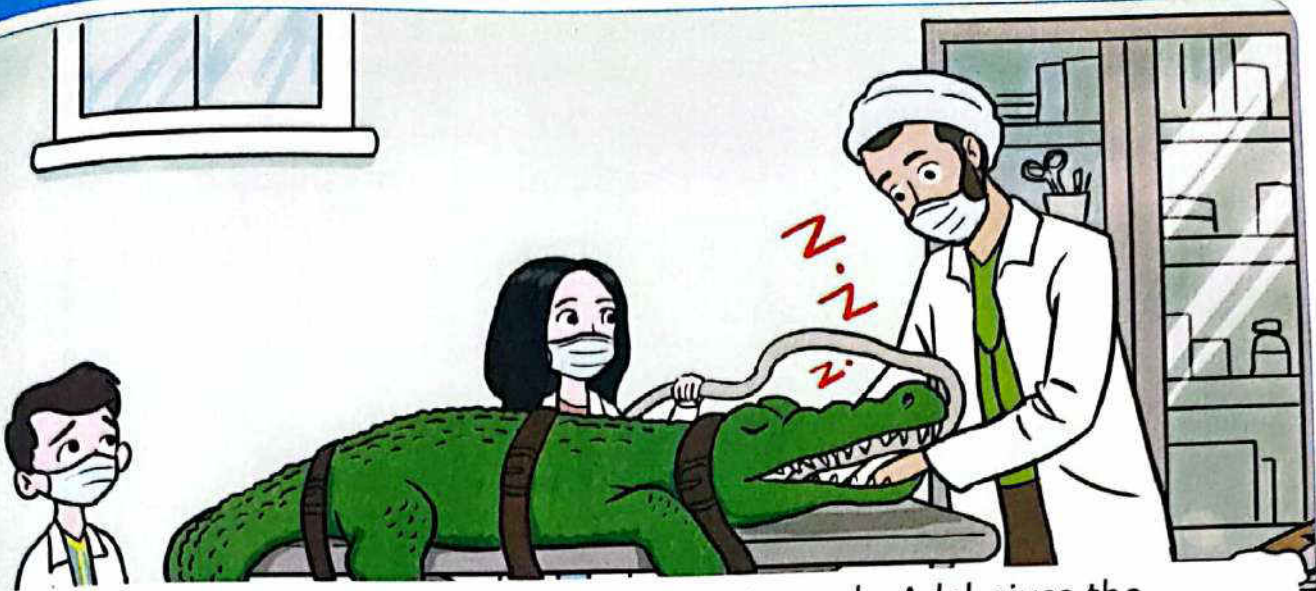
- Uncle Sami is a taxi driver. On the first day of their visit, he takes the children to see his friend Adel. Adel is a vet. He works in a **nature reserve**.
- العم سامى هو سائق سيارة أجرة. فى اليوم الأول لزيارتهم، يأخذ الأطفال لرؤية صديقه عادل. عادل طبيب بيطرى. يعمل فى محمية طبيعية.



- 'This is Zahra and Zein, ' says Uncle Sami. 'Zahra wants to be a vet.' 'Great !' says Adel. 'Come on then. You can both help me with the crocodiles.'

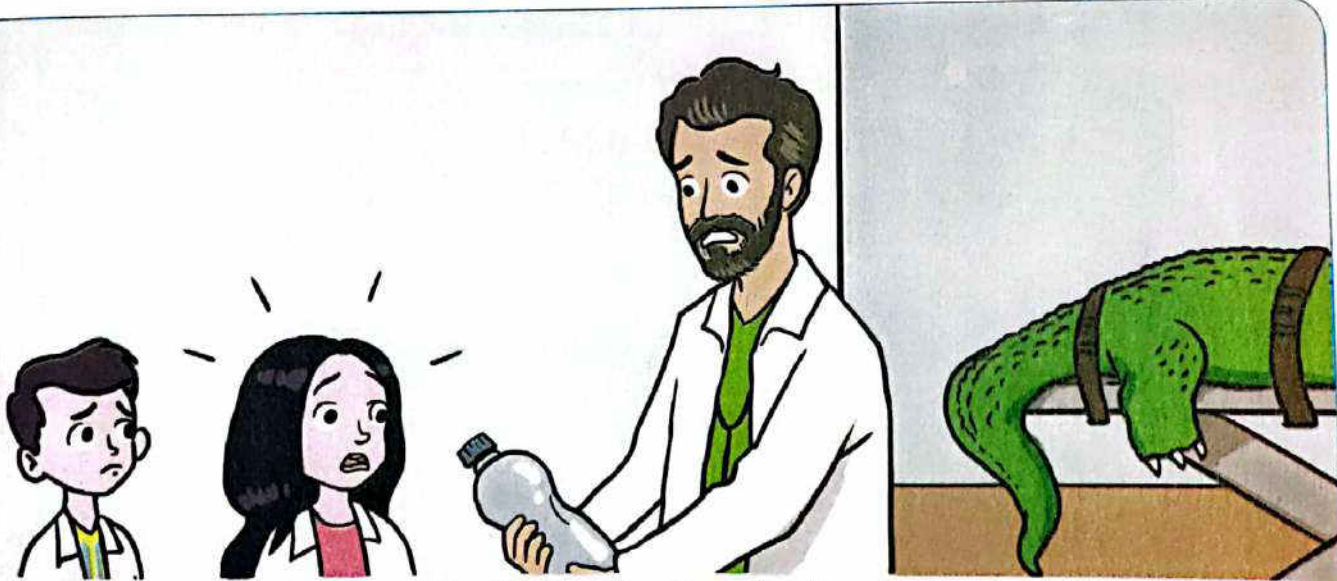
• يقول العم سامى : "هؤلاء زهرة وزين." زهرة تريد أن تصبح طبيبة بيطرية. يقول عادل : "رائع! تعالوا إذن. يمكنكما مساعدتى فى علاج التماسيح".

taxi driver	سائق سيارة أجرة	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	crocodile	تمساح
take	يأخذ	come on	تعال	help	يساعد/مساعدة
				visit	يزور



- One of the crocodiles has something in its stomach. Adel gives the crocodile some medicine for it to sleep. 'It's asleep now' Adel says. Then he puts his hand into the crocodile's mouth.

• أحد التماسيح لديه شيء ما في معدته. يعطى عادل التمساح بعض الأدوية لينام. يقول عادل: "إنه نائم الآن." ثم يضع يديه في فم التمساح.



- 'Look,' says Adel. 'It's a plastic bottle. People shouldn't throw garbage. It's dangerous for the animals.' 'What's the matter, Zein?' asks Zahra. 'I love animals,' says Zein, 'but I don't want to be a vet.'

• يقول عادل: "انظروا، إنها زجاجة بلاستيكية. لا ينبغي أن يرمى الناس قمامة. إنها خطيرة على الحيوانات." تسأل زهرة: "ما الأمر يا زين؟" يقول زين: "أنا أحب الحيوانات، لكنني لا أريد أن أصبح طبيب بيطري."

stomach	معدة	medicine	دواء	throw	يرمى	asleep	نائم
plastic	بلاستيك	bottle	زجاجة	put	يضع	garbage	قمامة

★ Their visit to a farm

زيارتهم إلى المزرعة



- Uncle Sami drives to a farm. 'Come and meet my friend, Fayez, and his wife Mervat', he says. 'They look after animals, too. You can help on their farm.'

• يقود العم سامي سيارة أجرة إلى المزرعة. قال: "تعال وقابل صديقي فايز وزوجته ميرفت. إنهم يعتنون بالحيوانات أيضاً. يمكنكم المساعدة في مزرعتهم."



- First of all, the children help Mervat with the animals. There are some baby goats without mothers. Mervat and Zahra mix some special milk. Zein feeds the babies with a bottle.

• قبل كل شيء، يساعد الأطفال ميرفت في رعاية الحيوانات. هناك بعض الماعز الرضع بدون أمهات. تخطط ميرفت وزهرة بعض الحليب الخاص. زين يطعم (الماعز) الرضع بزجاجة.

drive	يقود	meet	يقابل	wife	زوجة	look after	يعتني بـ	special	مميز
little	صغير	goat	عنزة	feed	يطعم	without	بدون	mix	يخلط



- Then they help with the **maize**. The maize plants are growing tall and strong and the maize is nice and yellow. The children pick lots of maize. It's hard work !

• ثم يساعدوا في حصاد الذرة. نباتات الذرة تنمو طويلة وقوية والذرة جميلة وصفراء اللون. يقطف الأطفال الكثير من الذرة. إنه عمل شاق !



It's an awesome **tractor** !
إنه جرار رائع !

- The children load the maize onto a tractor. 'Can I drive the tractor ?' asks Zein. Fayez laughs. 'No, I'm sorry, ' he says.

• يقوم الأطفال بتحميل الذرة على جرار. يسأل زين: "هل يمكنني قيادة الجرار؟" يضحك فايز. يقول: "لا ، أنا آسف".

maize	ذرة	pick	يقطف	load	يحمل
strong	قوى	laugh	يضحك	tractor	جرار



Activities on "The middle"

1 Read and match.

اقرأ وصل.

A

1. Adel is •
2. Uncle Sami is •
3. People shouldn't •
4. Zein feeds the baby goats •
5. Uncle Sami takes the children •

B

- ☐ a. throw garbage.
- ☐ b. a vet.
- ☐ c. with a bottle of milk.
- ☐ d. a taxi driver.
- ☐ e. driving the tractor.
- ☐ f. to see his friends.

2 Read and number. اقرأ ورقم.

1. Adel gives the crocodile some medicine for it to sleep.
2. Mervat and Zahra mix some special milk. Zein feeds the baby goats with a bottle.
3. Uncle Sami drives to a farm.



3 Read and circle.

اقرأ وضع دائرة.

1. Uncle Sami drives to a (school - farm).
2. The (maize - tomato) is nice and yellow.
3. The children load the maize onto a (van - tractor).

Notes for parents

1. Ask your child to read and match each part from column (A) to its suitable part from column (B).

السب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويصل كل جزء من العمود (A) بما يناسبه من العمود (B).

2. Ask your child to read and number each picture with its sentence.

السب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويرقم كل صورة بجملة.

3. Ask your child to read and circle the correct word.

السب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

★ Uncle Sami's idea

فكرة العم سامي



- The next morning, Zahra is playing on her phone. Uncle Sami has an idea. 'Do you like computer games, Zein?' he asks. 'Yes,' says Zein. 'Computer games are awesome!'

• في الصباح التالي، تلعب زهرة على هاتفها. العم سامي لديه فكرة يسأل: "هل تحب ألعاب الحاسب الآلي يا زين؟" يقول زين: "نعم، ألعاب الحاسب الآلي رائعة!"

- Uncle Sami's cousin Faten is a software engineer. She designs computer programs. The children go to her office. 'You can try these new games,' says Faten. The children have a lot of fun.

• فاتن، ابنة عم العم سامي، مهندسة برمجيات. هي تصمم برامج الكمبيوتر. يذهب الأطفال إلى مكتبها. تقول فاتن: "يمكنكم تجربة هذه الألعاب الجديدة." الأطفال تتمتع بالكثير من المرح.



awesome	رائع	software engineer	مهندس برمجيات	phone	هاتف
design	يصمم	office	مكتب عمل	try	يجرب

★ Zein's idea

فكرة زين



- Zein has an idea for a game. It's a **puzzle** game. He draws some ideas, but it isn't easy. Zein isn't happy with his game. 'Oh dear !' he says, 'I love games and puzzles, but I don't want to be a software engineer.'
- زين عنده فكرة لعبة. إنها لعبة لغز. يرسم بعض الأفكار، لكنها ليست سهلة. زين غير سعيد بلعبته. يقول: "يا عزيزي! أنا أحب الألعاب والألغاز، ولكنني لا أريد أن أكون مهندس برمجيات".



- 'It's OK,' says Uncle Sami. 'Come and meet my friend Basem. He's a plumber.' 'A plumber?' says Zahra.

يقول العم سامي: "لا بأس، تعال وقابل صديقي باسم. إنه سباك" تقول زهرة: "سباك؟".

idea	فكرة	game	لعبة	puzzle	لغز	easy	سهل
draw	يرسم	dear	عزيزي	plumber	سباك	It's OK	لا بأس / حسناً

The children help a plumber



• Basem is in Mr Sameh's apartment. He is fixing some pipes under a sink. The children help him. There are lots of pipes. 'It's like a puzzle ! ' says Zein.

• باسم فى شقة السيد سامح. إنه يصلح بعض المواسير تحت الحوض. يساعده الأطفال. هناك الكثير من المواسير. يقول زين : "إنه مثل اللغز!"

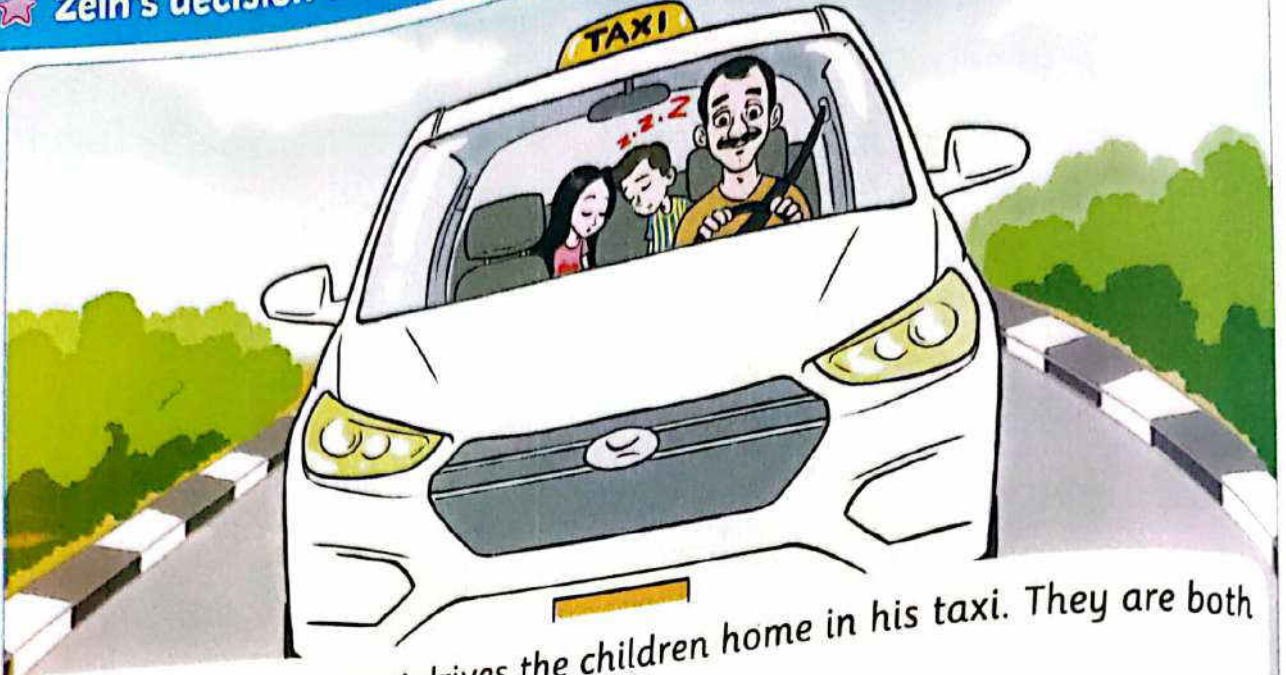


• Something falls out of an old pipe. It's a ring. 'That's my wife's ring!' says Mr Sameh. 'Thank you for finding it.' 'You're welcome,' says Basem. 'It's all part of the job.'

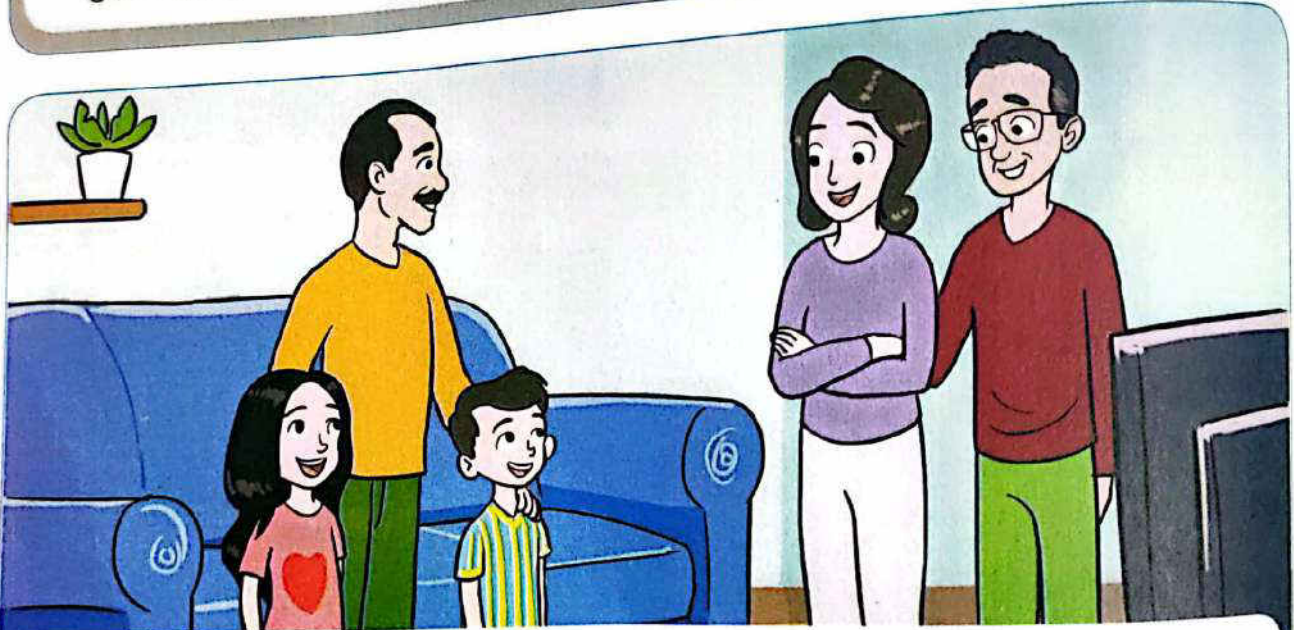
• يسقط شئ من أنبوب قديم. إنه خاتم. يقول الأستاذ سامح : "هذا خاتم زوجتى ! " شكرًا لك على إيجاده." يقول باسم : "على الرحب والسعة ، انه جزء من الوظيفة."

apartment	شقة سكنية	sink	حوض	pipe	ماسورة/أنبوبة
job	وظيفة	old	قديم	ring	خاتم

★ Zein's decision on what he wants to be



- That night, Uncle Sami drives the children home in his taxi. They are both happy and tired.
• فى تلك الليلة، يقود العم سامى الأطفال إلى المنزل فى سيارته الأجرة. كلاهما سعيدان ومتعبان.



- 'Do you know what you want to be now, Zein ?' asks Dad. 'Yes, I do,' says Zein. 'I want to be like Uncle Sami. He has got the best job. He goes to so many interesting places. I want to be a taxi driver !'

- يسأل الأب : "هل تعرف الآن ماذا تريد أن تصبح يا زين ؟" يقول زين : "نعم، أعرف، أريد أن أصبح مثل العم سامى. هو لديه الوظيفة الأفضل. هو يذهب إلى أماكن عديدة ممتعة. أريد أن أصبح سائق سيارة أجرة !"

taxi	سيارة أجرة	tired	متعب	the best	الأفضل
place	مكان	night	ليلة		



Activities on "The end"

1. Look, read and complete. انظر، اقرأ وأكمل.

taxi driver - vet - software engineer



1. Faten is a



2. I want to be a

2. Read and put (✓) or (X). اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X).

1. Zein wants to be a software engineer.
2. Zein doesn't want to be a taxi driver.
3. Zahra and Zein help the plumber with some pipes.
4. Basem is a plumber.
5. Basem found Mr Sami's wife's ring.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

3. Read and circle.

اقرأ وضع دائرة.

1. Basem is a (software engineer - plumber).
2. Uncle Sami drives the children home in his (taxi - bus).
3. Zein wants to be a (dentist - taxi driver).

1. Ask your child to look at the pictures, read and complete the sentences.

- اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر إلى الصور، يقرأ ويكمل الجمل.

2. Ask your child to read the sentences and put (✓) or (X) according to the story events.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويضع علامة (✓) أو (X) طبقاً لأحداث القصة.

3. Ask your child to read and circle the correct word.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

★ WH- question

Question words

What ? ماذا ... ؟ / ما ... ؟

- It's used to ask about things, jobs, animals.
تستخدم للسؤال عن أشياء، وظائف، حيوانات، موضوع.
- **What** is Uncle Sami's job ?
- He is a taxi driver.

When ? متى ... ؟

- It's used to ask about time and date.
تستخدم للسؤال عن الوقت والتاريخ.
- **When** do we go to the plumber ?
- At night.

Which ? أي .. ؟ (للتخيير)

- It's used to ask about choice.
تستخدم للسؤال عن الاختيار.
- Which animal is more dangerous ?
- Crocodiles.

How ? كيف .. ؟

- It's used to ask about the way we do things.
تستخدم للسؤال عن كيفية عمل الأشياء.
- How did they go to the nature reserve ?
- By taxi.

Where ? أين ... ؟

- It's used to ask about place.
تستخدم للسؤال عن المكان.
- Where does the vet work ?
At nature reserve.

Why ? لماذا ... ؟

- It's used to ask about reason.
تستخدم للسؤال عن السبب.
- Why is the crocodile sleeping ?
- Because Adel gives it some medicine.

Who ? من ... ؟

- It's used to ask about people.
تستخدم للسؤال عن الأشخاص.
- Who takes care of animals ?
- A vet.

Whose ? لمن .. ؟

- It's used to ask about who the owner of something is.
تستخدم للسؤال عن مالك الشيء.
- Whose computer is this ?
- It's Faten's.

Notes for parents

- Help your child identify the question words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كلمات الاستفهام.



1 Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

1. The maize is a yellow vegetable.

الذرة هي خضروات صفراء اللون.

2. The tractor is a large machine which a farmer uses.

الجرار هو ماكينة كبيرة يستخدمها الفلاح.

3. The hippo is one of the most dangerous animals in the world.

فرس النهر هو من الحيوانات الأكثر خطورة في العالم.

4. We use a sink to wash vegetables in the kitchen.

نستخدم الحوض لغسل الخضروات في المطبخ.

5. The vet is a doctor for animals.

الطبيب البيطري هو طبيب للحيوانات.

6. The nature reserve is a place where animals can live safely.

المحمية الطبيعية هي مكان يستطيع الحيوانات العيش فيه بأمان.

7. The crocodile is a big reptile with sharp teeth.

التمساح هو من الزواحف الكبيرة ذات الأسنان الحادة.

8. Oil or water can travel in pipes.

الزيت أو الماء يمكنه الانتقال عبر المواسير.

9. The puzzle is a game. You solve a problem to win the game.

اللغز هو لعبة. أنت تحل المشكلة لتفوز باللعبة.

10. Taxi driver is Uncle Sami's job.

سائق سيارة أجرة هي وظيفة العم سامي.

1. Ask your child to read the sentences and identify new information.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويتعرف على معلومات جديدة.

reptiles

زواحف

sharp

حاد

2 Read and Color.

1. A plumber helps people because he/she can fix problems with sinks, pipes and faucets.

السباك يساعد الناس لأنه يصلح / تصلح
المشاكل فى الأحواض ، المواسير و الصنابير.



2. A farmer helps people because he/she grows food and raises animals.

الفلاح يساعد الناس لأنه يزرع / تزرع
الطعام ويربى الحيوانات.



3. A taxi driver helps people because he/she takes people where they need to go.

سائق الأجرة يساعد الناس لأنه يأخذ الناس إلى
المكان حيث يحتاجون الذهاب إليه.



4. A vet helps people because he/she looks after their pets and farm animals.

الطبيب البيطرى يساعد الناس لأنه يعتنى /
تعتنى بحيواناتهم الأليفة وحيوانات مزرعتهم.



5. A software engineer helps people because he/she designs computer programs and video games.

مهندس البرمجيات يساعد الناس لأنه يقوم بتصميم
برامج الكمبيوتر وألعاب الفيديو.



Notes for parents

2. Ask your child to read the sentences and color the pictures.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ الجمل ويلون الصور.



Activities on story

1 Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

plumber – crocodile – tractor – vet – nature reserve

1. A is a large machine which a farmer uses.
2. A helps people because he looks after their pets and farm animals.
3. The is a big reptile with sharp teeth.
4. The is a place where animals can live safely.

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False). اقرأ وأكتب (T) أو (F).

1. Uncle Sami is a bus driver.
2. Zahra doesn't want to be a vet.
3. Zein feeds baby goats on the farm.
4. Zein wants to be a software engineer.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

3 Look, read and answer. انظر، اقرأ وأجب.

1. What is Adel's job ?



1. Ask your child to read and complete the sentences using the words in the box. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في المربع.
2. Ask your child to read and write (T) or (F) according to the events of the story. اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويكتب (صح) أو (خطأ) طبقاً لأحداث القصة.
3. Ask your child to look, read and answer the questions according to the events of the story. اطلب من طفلك أن ينظر، يقرأ ويجيب عن الأسئلة طبقاً لأحداث القصة.

2. What is uncle Sami's job ?



4 Read and put (✓) or (X). اقرأ وضع علامة (✓) أو (X).

(A) Basem is in Mr Sameh's apartment. He is fixing some pipes under a sink. The children help him. There are lots of pipes. "It's like a puzzle !" says Zein.

1. Basem is a plumber.
2. The children help Mr Sameh.
3. There are some pipes under a sink.
4. Basem is fixing some pipes.

☐
☐
☐
☐

(B) Zein has an idea for a game. It's a puzzle game. He draws some ideas, but it isn't easy. Zein isn't happy with his game. "Oh dear !" he says, "I love games and puzzles, but I don't want to be a software engineer".

1. Zein has no idea.
2. Zein wants to be a software engineer.
3. Zein isn't happy.
4. Zein draws some ideas.

☐
☐
☐
☐

Notes for parents

4. Ask your child to read and put (✓) or (X) according to the given sentences.

اطلب من طفلك أن يقرأ ويضع علامة (✓) أو (X) طبقاً للجمل المعطاة له.

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 1

Lesson 1

In Egypt, we grow rice, tomatoes and onions. Farmers raise chickens to get eggs and meat. Farmers produce many things. Our food is delicious.

Lesson 2

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We need oxygen in our bodies. We breathe in air through our nose. Our diaphragm pulls air into our lungs.

Lesson 3

Reem is healthy. She does a lot of sports at school. She also likes walking to her grandma's house at weekends.

Lesson 4 Parts 1 & 2

Talia and Suzanne are good friends. Talia is Egyptian and Suzanne is British. Talia and her mom go to Suzanne's apartment.

Talia is excited, but she is a bit worried.

General exercises on Unit 1

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. Farmers grow rice, potatoes and wheat. Fishermen catch thousands of fish. In Damietta, there are goats, cows and sheep.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. The diaphragm goes up. It pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs. We breathe out.

Unit 2

Lesson 2

The steppe eagle travels from Europe to Africa in winter. It lives in very big, open areas. It eats other birds, small mammals and rabbits.

Lesson 3

Camels are beautiful, strong animals. They help us carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes.

Lesson 4 part 1

The bear is surprised and angry. The pelican looks scared. The pelican whispers, "I'm sorry". The bear is bigger and stronger.

Lessons 5 & 6

Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They eat plants and leaves. They have long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun.

General exercises on Unit 2

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. It needs big ears to hear insects. The fox loses heat from its ears.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

The steppe eagle eats other birds, small mammals and rabbits. When it opens its wings, it is longer than you ! The female is bigger and heavier than the male.

Unit 3

Lesson 1

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination.

Lesson 2

My friend Ola lives in a village near the river. Farmers grow food for us to eat. They grow bean plants and vegetables. There are a lot of plants near the river. Plants near the river need a lot of water

Lesson 3

A plant produces pollen in a flower. It uses pollen to make new seeds. The seeds travel away from the plant. The seeds need a new place to grow.

Lesson 4 part 1

I'm Waleed. I live on a farm with mom and dad. We plant millions of seeds to keep the farm green. We use the Nile to water the seeds. We grow many fruits like oranges and lemons. We are very happy.

Lessons 5 & 6

Papyrus is a very special plant. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. It needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly.

General Exercises on Unit 3

The seeds need a new place to grow. Some seeds stick to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them.

تدريبات لطلاب الدهر الشريف

Papyrus is a very special plant. It is famous because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. Papyrus needs a lot of water and warm weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

Unit 4

Lesson 2

There are two beds in my room. There are two chairs and a table. The table is between the two beds. There is a book on the table.

Lesson 3

My school is next to the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends.

Lesson 4

I'm Reham. I live in Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris.

Lesson 5 parts 1 & 2

My friend Ali lives on a boat in the summer. His parents work on tourist boats, so he goes with them. They travel up and down the Nile.

General Exercises on Unit 4

Noha works at the shopping mall near her house. She sells clothes and shoes. She is very kind and helpful.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house is not the biggest in the village. It's between a yellow house and a brown house.

Unit 5

Lesson 4 part 1

Leen loved to experiment. She was very curious. She always carried a screwdriver with her.

Lessons 5 & 6

The builders build the school. The plumbers connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect electricity so that we can use lights.

General Exercises on Unit 5

When Talia was young, she played with blocks. She made a little house for her little dog. Now, she's an architect.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

A builder made the walls strong and safe. An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer.

Unit 6

Lesson 1

I am a fisherman. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market.

Lesson 2

The tourists come to Egypt all around the year. They take a taxi to a hotel. They stay in comfortable rooms. Many people work at the hotel to help them.

Lesson 3

Benban Solar Park is in Aswan. It opened in 2018. It's 37.2 km²

Lesson 4 part 1

There's an old fisherman in my village. He sells fish. He likes his job. We buy fish from him.

Lessons 5 & 6

A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.

General Exercises on Unit 6

My uncle grows oranges. All the year, he looks after the trees. Then in October, he sends the fruit to the factory to make orange juice

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

I want to be an electrician. I want to fix things. I like helping people and I think electricity is interesting, but it can be dangerous.



Answers of paragraphs

إجابات الفقرات الإنشائية الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Food in Egypt"

Egyptian farmers produce many things. We grow rice in Egypt. We grow tomatoes and onions. We raise chickens to get eggs and meat.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"The digestive system"

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat. We chew food with our teeth. The food goes down the esophagus. In the stomach, the food mixes with the gastric juice.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 Parts 1 & 2

"How can you make flapjacks?"

Melt the butter, sugar and honey in a large pan over low heat. Add oats and salt. Then, stir well. Bake for 20 minutes.

General Exercises on Unit 1

"Being healthy"

To be healthy, I drink plenty of water. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. I do a lot of exercise. I also play basketball. I stay away from smoke. I don't eat a lot of candy.

Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Crocodiles and snakes"

Crocodiles and snakes are very dangerous. But they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Steppe eagle"

The steppe eagle is a beautiful bird. It lives in very big open areas. It eats other birds and rabbits. The female is bigger than the male.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

"The horse"

The horse is 1.4 - 1.8 m tall. It weighs 380 - 550 kg. The horse has strong teeth. It likes to eat grass and drink fresh water.

General Exercises on Lesson 5 & 6

"Rhim gazelle"

Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert. They have hooves. They can walk on the sand.

General Exercises on Unit 2

"Camels"

Camels have large, flat feet. They help us to carry things. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. Camels are perfect for the desert. Camels can live without water for a long time.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"Desert habitat"

It is a desert habitat. There isn't much rain there. Plants that live in it don't need a lot of water. It's very hot in the desert.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 (part 1)

"Life on the farm"

I live on a farm with my family. We use plants to make the land green. We bring animals to the land. We use rainwater to water the seeds.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

"The life stages of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in sunlight and water it. Next, the seed germinates, and it starts to grow roots under the soil. After that, the shoot grows above the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

General Exercises on Unit 3

"Agricultural habitat"

Farmers work in an agricultural habitat. They look after the trees. They grow many plants. They grow plants like bean plants and orange trees. They sell some oranges to the supermarket. People need these plants to eat.

Unit 4

General Exercises on Unit 4

"My town"

This is my town. It's small, but it has stores, offices and many other places. My school is next to the hospital. Next to the hospital, there's a park. I often play football in the park with my friends. It's a good place to live in.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"Workers in our community"

A builder makes the walls strong and safe. An electrician connects the electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage to keep our house clean. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

"How can we use electricity safely?"

To use electricity safely, never touch anything electrical with wet hands.

Don't use a broken wire. You can get an electric shock. Never put anything into a socket, only use plugs.

General Exercises on Lesson 4 (part 1)

"A job I want to do"

My favorite job is an electrician. It's an important job. An electrician connects electricity so people can use lights and watch TV. We should learn about safety with electricity.

General Exercises on Lessons 5 & 6

"Pros and cons of the mail carrier's job"

There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise. They speak to a lot of people. But they can get a backbone.

General Exercises on Unit 5

"Mechanics"

My favorite job is a mechanic. The mechanics work in the repair shop. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic's job is very important. The mechanic is fixing my dad's car. He is clever.

Unit 6

General Exercises on Unit 6

"Renewable energy resources"

Renewable energy resources are everywhere. We make electricity from wind. A wind farm needs a big space to make electricity. Renewable energy resources make no pollution. Renewable energy never runs out.

Final Revision

By a group of supervisors

طبقاً لنواتج التعلم

CONNECT

mr.salah abdel salam

المعاصر في
اللغة الإنجليزية
المراجعة النهائية
للسف الرابع الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الأول



دليل ولي الأمر

PARENTS' GUIDE

4th
Primary
2022
FIRST TERM

CONTENTS

PART

1

* "That's Enough" is enough before the exam.

* جزء للمراجعة على المنهج بالكامل بطريقة كافية ووافية وسريعة طبقاً لنواتج التعلم.

* Important paragraphs.

* اهم الموضوعات الإنشائية التي وردت بالمنهج.

PART

2

تقييمات تراكمية. Accumulative Assessments.

PART

3

* 15 Sample Tests.

* ١٥ نموذج اختبار على المنهج بالكامل طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢١ - ٢٠٢٢.

* Listening Texts.

* نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالتدريبات والاختبارات.

A Listening (8 Marks)

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (استمع واكتب (ص) أو (خطأ) (8 Marks)

A listening text of about **FORTY (40)** words followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to write T (True) or F (False) for each sentence based on what they have heard. (2 marks each)

B Reading (11 Marks)

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (3 Marks)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

An unseen text from **50 to 60** words with **THREE (3)** deletions. A list of **FOUR (4)** separate words related to vocabulary is also given. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with one of the **FOUR (4)** words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full. (1 mark each)

3 Read and match (A) with (B): (اقرأ وصل العمود (A) بالعمود (B) (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) premises in column (A) and **FIVE (5)** responses in column (B) are provided. Learners are asked to match each premise with its suitable response. The items can be jobs and descriptions, sentence halves, words and definitions.....etc. (1 mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة (4 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text of not less than **70 to 80** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary four. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQ questions with FOUR (4) options each dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with TWO of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text. (One mark each)

C Writing (11 Marks)

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (6 Marks)

رتب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

THREE (3) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with SIX (6) words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form a correct sentence or question.

(2 marks each)

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي (1 Mark)

A simple statement (sentence or question) of about SIX (6) words with TWO (2) missing punctuation marks is provided (Capital Letter / Full Stop/ Question Mark/ Exclamation Mark/ Comma). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(Half a mark each)

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة أنشائية من (١٨) كلمة مستخدماً العناصر المرشدة (4 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than EIGHTEEN (18) words using TWO given guiding elements that can be words, questions, fact file.....etc.

(One mark for relevance of ideas and vocabulary- One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)

Part
1

“That’s Enough”
is enough before the exam.
المراجعة على المنهج بالكامل
بطريقة كافية وواضحة وسريعة.



Review on Unit 1



Vocabulary

watermelon	بطيخة	chicken	دجاجة
sugarcane	قصب السكر	grapes	عنب
rice	أرز	mangoes	مانجو
potatoes	بطاطس	milk	لبن
onions	بصل	lungs	الرئتين
esophagus	المريء	nose	أنف
stomach	معدة	diaphragm	الحجاب الحاجز
mouth	فم	raise	يربى
large intestine	الأمعاء الغليظة	produce	يُنتج
small intestine	الأمعاء الدقيقة	grow	يلدغ
bananas	موز	delicious	لذيذ
drink cola	يشرب مياه غازية	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
burger	برجر	play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة
eat candy	يأكل الحلوى	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلي
burn	حرق / يحترق	sprain	يلتوى - إلتواء
scrape	خدش	cough	يكح / يسعل
band-aid	ضمادة طبية (للجروح)	back	ظهر
tea	شاي	gloves	قفازات
honey	عسل	cookies	كعك محلي
oats	شوفان	flapjack	مطيرة / كعك محلي (بريطاني) - فطيرة الشومان
ingredients	مكونات - مقادير	apartment	شقة سكنية
land	أرض	famous	مشهور
governorate	محافظة	life	حياة
catch	يصطاد	farmer	فلاح

Phonics

Short vowel



bag



mix



mom



cake



rice



nose

Long vowel

Language

1 A conjunction : is a word that joins words and sentences.
أداة الربط هي كلمة تربط الكلمات والجمل معًا.

1 We use (and) to add two ideas together. ١. نستخدم (and) عند إضافة فكرتين معًا.

and

9

EX.: I play basketball

and

I play football
in the park.



2 We use (but) to show contrast. ٢. نستخدم (but) عند توضيح التناقض.

but

لكن

EX.: I love burgers

, but

I only eat one
a week.



2 The prefix "re"

البادئة "re"

(re) is a prefix that can be added at the beginning of the verb and give the meaning of "again".

(re) هي بادئة يمكن أن تضاف في بداية الفعل وتعطي معنى (مرة ثانية).

do → redo

clean → reclean

EX.:

She **redid** her homework.

=

She **did** her homework **again**.

General Exercises on Unit 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

- The food looks delicious.
- My dad made special food for us.
- Egyptian farmers produce many fruits.
- We don't grow rice in Egypt.

T F

☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐

B

- The oxygen goes from the air into our blood.
- We need carbon dioxide in our bodies.
- The diaphragm pushes air with oxygen out of our lungs.
- Our heart pumps blood around our body.

T F

☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

esophagus - blood - diaphragm - oxygen

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We need

(1) in our bodies. We breathe in air through our nose.

The (2) goes down and pulls air into our lungs. In the

lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our (3)

Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

B

yummy - hot - good - scientist

My mom and I go walking in the desert with my dad. Dad is a (1)..... and he likes looking at animals and plants. We go with him every weekend. It's very interesting, but it's very (2)..... sometimes. I only drink water because I don't like cola. My mum makes (3)..... salads. I think I'm healthy.

C

cheese - fishermen - Life - farmers

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The (1)..... can grow rice, potatoes, wheat, lemons, grapes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiati (2)..... is very delicious. About one and a half million people live in this part of Egypt. (3)..... is good in Damietta!

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A

1. Farmers produce •
2. The esophagus goes from •
3. When we breathe, •
4. The large intestine is •

B

- ☐ a. the mouth to the stomach.
- ☐ b. we take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.
- ☐ c. vegetables like onions.
- ☐ d. around the small intestine.
- ☐ e. under the lungs.

(B)

A

1. Stay away
2. We chew food
3. We need the energy
4. I drink

B

- ☐ a. and nutrients in our body.
- ☐ b. plenty of water.
- ☐ c. with our teeth.
- ☐ d. from smoke.
- ☐ e. special food for us.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :
(A)

1. produce – in Egypt – What – we – foods – do ?

2. large – removes – The – waste – intestine.

3. you – are – Do – healthy – you – think ?

(B)

1. is – Damietta – Life – good – in.

2. the oxygen – Where – from – the air – does – go ?

3. a – What – idea – great !

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

How can we have a healthy respiratory system ?

Guiding words :

- stay away
- smoke

.....

.....

.....

.....

(B)

How can we help someone who falls over and cuts their leg ?

Guiding words :

- kind
- band-aid

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 2



Vocabulary

fur	فراء - فرو	ugly	مببح المنظر
feathers	ريش	important	هام
wing	جناح	desert	صحراء
beak	منقار	snake	ثعبان
huge	ضخم	camel	جمال
eagle	نسر	spider	عنكبوت
pelican	بجعة	crocodile	تمساح
lizard	سحلية	helpful	متعاون - مفيد
fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك	sand	رمال
scary	مخيف	female	أنثى
How tall/long ... ?	كم الطول ... ؟	male	ذكر
How heavy ... ?	كم الوزن ... ؟	mammals	ثدييات
open areas	مناطق مفتوحة	flat feet	أقدام مسطحة / مستوية
amazing	مدهش	strong	قوى
beautiful	جميل	noisy	مزعج - مليء بالضوضاء
perfect	مثالي	hump	بسانم الجمل (ظهر الجمل)
large	كبير (الحجم)	fresh water	ماء عذب
grass	عشب (حشائش)	bear	دب
paw	كف (قدم حيوان)	scared	خائف
claw	مخالب (حيوان / طائر)	shout	يصرخ / يصيح
insect	حشرة	whisper	يهمس
juicy	كثير العصارة	naked mole rat	فأر الخلد العاري (بدون شعر)
rhinoceros	غزال الريم	temperature	درجة حرارة
hoof (hooves)	حافر (حوافر)	coat	فراء حيوان (غطاء جسم الحيوان)
horns	قرون	dangerous	خطير
control	يتحكم		

Phonics

/b/



bear



bird



beak



bee



pelican

/p/



pin



pear



peas

Language

صيغة المقارنة

Comparative

Comparative : is to compare between two things / people in an adjective. صيغة المقارنة : هي المقارنة بين شيئين أو شخصين في صفة ما.

A. Short adjectives : Adjectives that have one syllable.

الصفات القصيرة: هي صفات مكونة من مقطع واحد.

short adj. + er + than.....

EX.: - The elephant is **bigger than** the lion.

- The new dress is **nicer than** the old one.

B. Long adjectives : Adjectives that have two or more syllables.

الصفات الطويلة : هي صفات مكونة من مقطعين أو أكثر.

more + long adj. + than

EX.: - Horses are **more beautiful than** camels.

- Camels are **more useful than** horses.

General Exercises on Unit 2

لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

1. Rhim gazelles live near the sea.
2. Rhim gazelles have yellow - white coats.
3. Rhim gazelles have short horns.
4. Rhim gazelles eat plants and leaves.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B

1. A pelican and a bear are very hungry.
2. The bear reaches for the fish.
3. The pelican lifts its paw.
4. The bear opens its beak.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

female - mammals - lives - travels

The steppe eagle lives around 30-40 years. It weighs around 3 kilograms. It (1)..... from Europe to Africa in winter. It lives in very big, open areas. It eats other birds, small (2)..... and rabbits. When it opens its wings , it's longer than you! The (3)..... is bigger and heavier than the male.

B

water - sand - clothes - carry

Camels are amazing! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help us to (1)..... things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make (2).....! Camels are perfect for the desert. They can live without (3)..... for a long time.

C

Scientists - ill - temperature - cute

The naked mole rat lives in eastern Africa. It has big teeth and no hair. It can't control its body (1)..... because it has no hair. It doesn't get (2)..... It lives for a very long time. (3)..... want to learn all about naked mole rats. They're not cute animals, but they are amazing!

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

1. The fennec fox lives
2. The female eagle is
3. Rhim gazelles have
4. Camels are very noisy

B

- ☐ a. bigger than the male.
- ☐ b. hooves on their feet.
- ☐ c. in the sea.
- ☐ d. and they can get angry.
- ☐ e. in the desert.

(B)

A

1. Horses have
2. The naked mole rat
3. The bear is stronger
4. Camels can live

B

- ☐ a. doesn't get ill.
- ☐ b. than the pelican.
- ☐ c. lifts its paw.
- ☐ d. without water for a long time.
- ☐ e. large, beautiful eyes.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. scary – are – Which – animals ?

.....

2. to – grass – Horses – eat – like.

.....

3. a camel – live – does – How – long ?

.....

(B)

1. perfect – Camels – for – are – desert – the.

.....

2. the bear – angry – Why – look – does ?

.....

3. have – gazelles – Rhim – horns – long.

.....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

Scary animals

Guiding words :

- crocodile
- dangerous

(B)

Camels

Guiding words :

- strong
- carry

Review on Unit 3



Vocabulary

soil	تربة	inside	داخل
leaf	ورقة شجر	plants	نباتات
roots	جذور	sunflower	زهرة عباد الشمس
shoot	برعم - نبتة	rose	وردة
seeds	بذور	bean plant	نبات الفول
germination process	عملية الإنبات	reed	عود الخيزران
lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس	daisy	زهرة الأقحوان
acacia	شجرة السنط	orange tree	شجرة البرتقال
agricultural	زراعي	tamarisk	شجرة الطرفاء
habitat	موطن - بيئة	stick	يلصق
chloroplasts	البلاستيدات الخضراء	float	يطفو
microscope	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	polluted	ملوث
carbon dioxide	غاز ثاني أكسيد الكربون	air	هواء
pollen	حبوب اللقاح	cell	خلية
sunlight	ضوء الشمس	wind	رياح
a billion	بليون - مليار (١٠٠٠ مليون)	travel away	ينتقل بعيداً
dry	جاف	noise	ضوضاء
rainwater	مياه الأمطار	suitcase	حقيرة السفر
papyrus	نبات البردي	life stages	مراحل الحياة
Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	sandals	صندل
germinate	ينبت	basket	سلة
The Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	finally	أخيراً

Phonics



sleep

/sl/



slice



slippers



sweep

/sw/



switch



sweets



swim



swan

Language

1 Superlative adjectives

صفات صيغة التفضيل

Usage : We use superlative adjectives to compare between three or more things.
 نستخدم صفات صيغة التفضيل عند المقارنة بين ثلاثة أشياء أو أكثر.

Formation التكوين

A. Short adjectives : add "-est" at the end of the adjective

the + short adj. + est
 صفة قصيرة + est

EX.: The elephant is **the biggest** land animal.

B. Long adjectives : use "the most"

the most + long adj.
 صفة طويلة

EX.: The lion is **the most dangerous** animal.

2 The suffix "-ful" :

The suffix : is a letter or a group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word.

اللاحقة هي إضافة حرف أو مجموعة من الأحرف في نهاية الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

Learn : "-ful" is a suffix meaning "full of" (ملئنة بـ)
 (-ful) هي لاحقة تعني (ملئنة بـ)

EX.: She's a helpful girl.

General Exercises on Unit 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

- Green plants take oxygen from the air.
- The plants produce oxygen.
- The plant cells need oxygen to make food for the plant.
- Plants give us oxygen to breathe.

[T] [F]

[] []

[] []

[] []

[] []

B

- We plant a seed and the plant grows, that is called germination.
- We water the plant every day.
- The roots grow above the soil.
- Tomatoes have shoots inside.

[T] [F]

[] []

[] []

[] []

[] []

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

roots - shoot - sunlight - plant

The germination process starts when we put a seed in soil. The seed needs (1)..... and water, so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then, it grows a (2)..... and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full (3)..... grows leaves and flowers. A plant produces pollen in a flower.

B

pollen - sunlight - cells - Chloroplasts

A plant is made of millions of cells. The plant (1) are very small. (2) make the plant green. You can only see them with a microscope. The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use (3), carbon dioxide and water.

C

cells - carbon dioxide - breathe - eat

In big cities, the air is polluted because of factories and cars. There is a lot of (1) in the air. Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plant (2) need carbon dioxide to make food for the plants. The plants also produce oxygen. Plants in our houses and parks give us oxygen to (3)

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A

1. Oxygen is a gas
2. The root grows
3. Some seeds can
4. Tomatoes have

B

- ☐ a. above the soil.
- ☐ b. under the soil.
- ☐ c. stick to an animal's fur.
- ☐ d. seeds inside.
- ☐ e. in the air that people need to breathe.

(B)

A

1. There is a lot of
2. Chloroplasts make
3. Papyrus needs
4. The rose is

B

- ☐ a. the plant green.
- ☐ b. warm weather to grow.
- ☐ c. and faces the sun.
- ☐ d. taller than the daisy.
- ☐ e. carbon dioxide in the air.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. green – the – Why – tomatoes – are ?

2. cell – or – Is – big – small – a plant ?

3. grow – for – Farmers – food – to eat – us.

(B)

1. move – the – Seeds – wind – can – in.

2. see – Can – the leaves – you – the flowers – and ?

3. grow – farmers – sunflowers – Why – do ?

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

A plant cell

Guiding words :

- microscope
- chloroplasts

(B)

The life stages of a sunflower

Guiding words :

- soil
- germinate

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

A plant cell

Guiding words :

- microscope
- chloroplasts

(B)

The life stages of a sunflower

Guiding words :

- soil
- germinate

Review on Unit 4



Vocabulary

balcony	شُرقة	couch	أريكة / كنية
bathroom	دورة مياه	tent	خيمة
living room	حجرة معيشة	house	منزل
dining room	حجرة الطعام	houseboat	عوامة
kitchen	مطبخ	cave	كهف
bedroom	حجرة نوم	hospital	مستشفى
post office	مكتب بريد	supermarket	سوبر ماركت
school	مدرسة	shopping mall	مركز تسوق
museum	متحف	sick	مريض
cloth	قماش	send letters	يرسل خطابات
store	متجر	town	مدينة صغيرة
place	مكان	south	جنوب
sports club	نادي رياضي	Take the second right.	خذ المنعطف ثاني يمين.
station	محطة	It's on the corner.	إنه في الزاوية.
Turn right.	اتجه يميناً.	bazaar	بازار (سوق تجاري)
Turn left.	اتجه يساراً.	safaris	رحلات سفاري
beach	شاطئ	restaurant	مطعم
upside down	مقلوب - رأساً على عقب	Brighton Pier	رصيف ميناء برايتون
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى	worker	عامل
Sahl Hasheesh	سهل حشيش (في الفردقة)	kind	طيب / عطوف
tourist	سائح	fresh	طازج
check	يفحص / يتحقق	lovely	جميل - محبوب

Phonics

/f/



foot



face



fan



fish



cave



van



living room



vegetables

/v/

Language

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان : **Prepositions of place :**



in front of



on



behind



in



between



under



next to



above

**Prepositions
of place**

General Exercises on Unit 4

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

1. My favorite room is the living room without the balcony.
2. I love to sit in the balcony.
3. My mother doesn't like the balcony.
4. I can't see the street from the balcony.

T F

☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐

B

1. There are lots of interesting things to do in Hurghada.
2. Tourists go on safaris in the Sahara Desert.
3. Sahl Hasheesh is in the north of Hurghada.
4. Sahl Hasheesh has interesting bazaars.

T F

☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐
☐ ☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

watch - apartment - balcony - relax

My name's Sara. I live in an (1)..... My favorite room is the bedroom where I can relax and do my homework quietly. I talk to my family and (2)..... TV in the living room. I love to sit in the (3)..... where I can see the people in the street.

B

beach - tourists - rides - live

Brighton is a small city in the south of England. About 200,000 people (1) there. There's a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. Lots of (2) come to Brighton to go to the beach. There are many games and (3) for children there. We also have a very unusual house in Brighton.

C

biggest - family - village - Nile

My cousin's name is Hamza. He lives in a small (1) It is next to the (2) He lives in a big house with his family. Their house is the (3) in the village. It is between a red house and a yellow house. There are tall trees behind their house.

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A

1. I live in a city •
2. My favorite room •
3. The supermarket is •
4. People in the desert •

B

- ☐ a. we buy food.
- ☐ b. live in a tent.
- ☐ c. a place where we buy food.
- ☐ d. called Hurghada.
- ☐ e. is the living room.

(B)

A

1. The school
2. Where's the post office ?
3. She helps us when
4. The tent in the desert is

B

- ☐ a. I see her every week.
- ☐ b. Go straight ahead. It's on the corner.
- ☐ c. is a place where we learn.
- ☐ d. made of cloth.
- ☐ e. we can't find something.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. room - your - is - Which - favorite ?

2. bedroom - sleep - the - in - I.

3. the - is - Where - office - post ?

(B)

1. shower - bathroom - I - a - take - in the.

2. in front of - the - office - My dad's - is - park.

3. in - lives - She - apartment - an.

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

(A)

Your town

Guiding words :

- stores
- school

(B)

A cave

Guiding words :

- rooms
- rock

Review on Unit 5



Vocabulary

electrician	كهربائي	plumber	سباك
mechanic	ميكانيكي	bus driver	سائق حافلة
builder	عامل بناء	mail carrier	ساعي البريد
garbage collector	جامع قمامة	faucet	صنبور
wall	حائط	deliver	يوصل / يسلم
safe	أمن	letter	خطاب
electricity	كهرباء	packages	طرود بريدية
lights	أضواء	plug	قابس (فيشة)
pipe	ماسورة	unplug	يנתزع القابس الكهربائي (يفصل)
lightning	ظاهرة البرق	safety	أمان
practice	يتدرب / يمارس	broken wire	سلك مكسور (مكشوف)
electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	storm	عاصفة
socket	مقبس كهرباء	repair shop	ورشة إصلاحات
community	مجتمع	local home	منزل محلي / داخل المدينة
skills	مهارات	hard hats	قبعات صلبة
businesses	مؤسسات تجارية	disadvantages	عيوب
advantages	مميزات	patient	صبور
screwdriver	مفك البراغي	architect	مهندس معماري
tape measure	شريط القياس	teacher	معلم
blocks	مكعبات	curious	فضولي - محب للاستطلاع
experiment	تجربة	backache	ألم بالظهر
pros	إيجابيات - مزايا	mail bag	حقيبة البريد
cons	سلبيات - عيوب	cell phone	هاتف محمول
weather	طقس	workers	عمال

Phonics

Two - syllable words



builder



doctor

Three - syllable words



architect

Four - syllable words



electrician

Language

Demonstrative pronouns :

ضمائر الإشارة :

Demonstrative pronouns are : "this, that, these and those".

Usage : To show how close an object is to the speaker.

الاستخدام : لتوضيح مدى قرب الشيء للمتحدث.

Singular

المفرد

This

is

near to the speaker

تستخدم بمعنى هذا / هذه (للإشارة للمفرد القريب).

That

far from the speaker

تستخدم بمعنى ذلك / تلك (للإشارة للمفرد البعيد).

EX.:- This mechanic works in the repair shop.

- That mail carrier is delivering the packages.

Plural

الجمع

These

are

near to the speaker

تستخدم بمعنى هؤلاء (للإشارة للجمع القريب).

Those

far from the speaker

تستخدم بمعنى أولئك (للإشارة للجمع البعيد).

EX.:- These are the builders' hard hats.

- Those mountains are very high.

General Exercises on Unit 5

لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

1. A builder didn't make the walls strong.
2. A mechanic connected the electricity.
3. A plumber connected the pipes and faucets.
4. You can have water to brush your teeth.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B

1. Being a mail carrier is an easy job.
2. Mail carriers are inside all the day.
3. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise.
4. Being outside is great when the weather is good.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

give - clean - walks - keep

A garbage collector is outside all day. He takes away all the garbage, so you can (1)..... your house nice and clean. When it rains, the garbage collector gets wet ! But the garbage collector is happy because he helps to (2)..... the city. He is healthy because he (3)..... every day.

B

making - tape measure - block - going

When Nancy was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one
 (1) on top of another. When she was older, she started
 (2) things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed
 for her sister's doll. She always carried a (3) and a pencil.

C

electricians - skills - connect - cleaners

In our community, we can all help each other. Many of people
 around us have special (1) to help us. For example, the
 builders build the school. The plumbers (2) the pipes, so
 that we have water. The (3) connect electricity, so that
 we can use lights. All the jobs are very important.

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

(A)

A

1. The mechanic
2. A plumber connects
3. An electrician
4. A garbage collector

B

- ☐ a. takes away all the garbage.
- ☐ b. connects the electricity.
- ☐ c. the pipes and faucets.
- ☐ d. fixes the cars.
- ☐ e. delivers the packages and letters.

(B)

A

1. Never put anything into a socket, •
2. A builder •
3. When the bus breaks, •
4. The bus drivers •

B

- ☐ a. connected the pipes and faucets.
- ☐ b. the bus driver needs the mechanic to fix it.
- ☐ c. made the walls strong and safe.
- ☐ d. bring the children to school.
- ☐ e. only use plugs.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

(A)

1. save – How – electricity - we - can ?

2. you – helps – Who – go to – on time – school ?

3. light – day – the – in – Use – natural.

(B)

1. are – important – All – jobs – the – very.

2. mechanics – in the – Those – work – shop – repair.

3. your – mail – delivers – A – carrier – letters.

- 5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :
(A)

Workers in your community

Guiding words :

- bus driver
- get to

(B)

How can we save electricity ?

Guiding words :

- turn off
- unplug

Review on Unit 6



Vocabulary

energy	طاقة	geologist	عالم جيولوجي
farming	زراعة	engineer	مهندس
mining	تعدين	guide	مرشد سياحي
fishing	صيد سمك	pick	يقطف
wave power	طاقة الأمواج	farmer	فلاح
wind farm	محطة طاقة الرياح	librarian	أمير مكتبة
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	tourism industry	صناعة السياحة
fisherman	صياد سمك	education	التعليم
transportation	وسائل نقل	coal	فحم
metal(s)	معادن - معادن	iron	حديد
copper	نحاس	tractor	جرار
look after	يعتني بـ	factory	مصنع
nets	شباك	cook	طباخ / طاه
salary	راتب	industries	صناعات
government	حكومة	hotel	فندق
economy	اقتصاد	teach	يُدرس - يعلم
sell	يبيع	road	طريق
customer	زبون	decision	قرار
pollution	تلوث	energy source	مصدر الطاقة
cut down	يقطع	wave energy	طاقة الأمواج
oil	زيت / بترول	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
gas	غاز	renewable resources	موارد متجددة
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	non-renewable resources	موارد غير متجددة
fresh	طازج	run out	ينفذ (ينتهي)
fish van	شاحنة بيع الأسماك	disappointed	محبط
encourage	يشجع	engine	محرك
litter	قمامة	advice	نصيحة
respect	يحترم - احترام	surprising	مفاجئ - مذهش
best	أفضل	traffic light	إشارة مرور

Phonics

/ʌ/



sun

/æ/



van

/ɪ/



fish

/e/

10

ten

Language

1 The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative form

Subject + باقي الجملة + الفعل فى التصريف الثانى

EX.: She **looked** out of the window.

Negative form

Subject + **didn't** + inf. مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملةEX.: She **didn't go** to the museum.

2 There was / There wasn't

كان يوجد / لايوجد

للتعبير عن شئ كان موجود / غير موجود فى زمن الماضى.

EX.: There **was** a beautiful flower.There **was not (wasn't)** a mango on the tree.

Notice : There wasn't = There was not

General Exercises on Unit 6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

A

1. I'm a geologist.
2. I work in a school library.
3. I look after all the animals.
4. I help children find the information they need.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

B

1. The hotel pays a salary to the customers.
2. The workers use their salary to buy food.
3. Our salary helps our community.
4. Some of workers' salary goes to the government.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box :

A

metals - ground - study - help

I'm Nahla. I'm a geologist. I (1)..... the ground and the rocks under our feet. I work in the desert. I study what is under the (2)..... . I find special (3)..... and think how we can take the metals out of the ground. I like my job although it isn't easy.

B

think - change - encourage - ask

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to (1) quickly. They need to (2) their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. They can (3) their students' lives.

C

fixed - mechanic - helped - sad

One day, the fisherman's car stopped in front of my house. He was very (1) . My grandfather was a (2) . He taught my father all about cars. My father (3) the car. The fisherman was happy and thanked my father.

3 Read and match (A) with (B) :

A

1. Coal and oil are
2. We can make electricity
3. Wind energy is
4. To make wave energy,

B

- ☐ a. from wind, water and the sun.
- ☐ b. you need the sea.
- ☐ c. non-renewable resources.
- ☐ d. renewable resources.
- ☐ e. a renewable energy resource.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences ;
(A)

1. want - What - you - do - to do ?
2. a lot of - farm - A solar - needs - sunshine.
3. engine - the - We - the sound - heard - of.

(B)

1. work - people - the hotel - many - in - How ?
2. work - industry - the - I - tourism - in.
3. turbines - with - Who - wind - works ?

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements :

Farming

Guiding words :

- grow
- supermarkets

Important paragraphs

أهم الفقرات الإنشائية



© Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words on :

يكتب الطالب موضوعاً إنشائياً من ثمانية عشر كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التي تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجابتها النموذجية في نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Unit 1

1 "How can you make flapjacks?"

Melt the butter, sugar and honey in a large pan over low heat. Add oats, salt and stir well. Bake for 20 minutes.

2 "Being healthy"

To be healthy, I drink plenty of water. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables. I also play basketball.

Unit 2

3 "Crocodiles and snakes"

Crocodiles and snakes are very dangerous. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This control the number of these small animals.

4 "Steppe eagle"

The steppe eagle is a beautiful bird. It eats other birds and rabbits. The female is bigger than the male.

5 "The horses"

The horses have beautiful eyes. They have strong teeth.

They like to eat grass and drink fresh water.

6 "The pelican and the bear"

A bear and a pelican are in the river. They are hungry. They try to catch the big, juicy fish.

7 "Camels"

Camels have large, flat feet. They help us to carry things. We can use their fur to make clothes.

Unit 3

8 "Desert habitat"

There isn't much rain in the desert habitat. Plants that live in the dessert don't need a lot of water. Tamarisk and acacia are in desert habitat.

9 "The life stages of a tomato"

First, you plant the tomato seed in soil. You put it in the sunlight after that water it. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

10 "The life stages of a sunflower"

I plant a sunflower. First, I put the seed in soil and water it. Next, the shoot grows above the soil.

Unit 4

11 "My home"

I live in an apartment with my family. There are three rooms in our apartment. My favorite room is the living room.

12 "Your town"

This is my town. My school is next to the hospital. The park where I play with my friends is between the station and the post office.

Unit 5

13 "Workers in our community"

A builder makes the walls strong and safe. An electrician connects the electricity. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage to keep our community clean.

14 "How can we use electricity safely?"

To use electricity safely, never touch anything electrical with wet hands. Don't use a broken wire. Never put anything into a socket.

15 "A job I want to do"

My favorite job is an electrician. It's an important job. I can connect the electrician wires so people can use lights and watch TV.

16 "The mail carrier's job"

There are pros and cons of being a mail carrier. They get a lot of exercise. But they wake up very early.

17 "Mechanics"

The mechanics work in the repair shops. They fix the cars and buses. The mechanic job is very important.

Unit 6

18 "Benban Solar Park"

Benban Solar Park is in Aswan. It opened in 2018. It can make 3.8 TWh of electricity per year. It is very big.

19 "Renewable energy resources"

Renewable energy resources are everywhere. We make electricity from wind. A wind farm needs a big space to make electricity.

Part
2

Accumulative Assessments

تقييمات تراكمية



Sample Test 1 on Unit 1

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

T F

1. The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients.
2. The farmers can't grow rice and tomatoes.
3. Fishermen catch thousands of cows.
4. Life is good in Damietta!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

mixes – gastric juice – teeth – stomach

We put food in our mouth. We chew food with our (1)
The food goes down the esophagus. It arrives in the (2)
In the stomach, the food mixes with the gastric juice.
The (3) changes the food into a simpler form.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Domiati cheese is •
2. We need the energy •
3. Flapjacks are •
4. We raise •

B

- ☐ a. and nutrients in our body.
- ☐ b. big, square cookies.
- ☐ c. with our teeth.
- ☐ d. chickens in Egypt.
- ☐ e. very famous.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We use our digestive system when we eat. The food goes down to the esophagus. The esophagus goes from the mouth to the stomach. When the food moves from the esophagus to the stomach, the gastric juice digests it. Food moves from the stomach to the small intestine to complete the digestion. The large intestine is around the small intestine. It takes water and salt from the food to the body. It removes waste.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about

a. our respiratory system

b. our digestive system

c. our nervous system

d. our muscular system

2. The esophagus goes from the mouth to the

a. nose

b. blood

c. arm

d. stomach

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does the gastric juice do?

4. What does the large intestine do?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. away - from - Stay - smoke.

2. lives - Damietta - in - Who - governorate?

3. produce - Egyptian - things - farmers - many.

6 Punctuate the following.

i do a lot of sports at school

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The respiratory system

Guiding words :

- breathe
- goes down

Sample Test 2 on Units 2 & 3

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

- | | T | F |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Crocodiles are very safe. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Crocodiles and snakes control the number of the small animals. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. Snakes eat lizards. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Snakes and crocodiles do a very important job. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

warm – sandals – famous – river

Papyrus is an Egyptian plant. It is a very special plant. It is (1) because Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make paper. They also made (2) and baskets from papyrus. Papyrus needs a lot of water and (3) weather to grow quickly. It grows in the Nile Delta near the river.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
- Plants that live in the desert
 - I think the rose is
 - Camels are very noisy
 - The fox's thick fur

- B**
- the most beautiful flower.
 - keeps it warm.
 - and they can get angry.
 - don't need a lot of water.
 - need a lot of water.

6 Punctuate the following.

is a plant cell big or small

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Agricultural habitat

Guiding words :

- farmers
- grow

Sample Test 3 on Units 1, 2 & 3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Judy does a lot of sport at school.
2. Judy walks to her grandma's house on Mondays.
3. Judy doesn't like fruit.
4. Judy goes to her grandma's house on foot.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fresh – strong – salt – large

Horses are fast animals. They are 1.4 - 1.8 m tall. They weigh from 380 – 550 kg. They have (1) , beautiful eyes. They have (2) teeth. They like to eat grass and drink (3) water. They live from 25 to 30 years.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. The nose is in •
 2. My favorite fruits are •
 3. Wash the scrape •
 4. Diaphragm is •

- B**
- ☐ a. bananas and watermelon.
 - ☐ b. with water and soap.
 - ☐ c. the center of the face.
 - ☐ d. a muscle under the lungs.
 - ☐ e. play video games.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My grandparents and I live on the farm. At first, life was very difficult. We worked hard and planted millions of seeds. We used rainwater to water the seeds. We needed about a billion liters of water a year. We grew many fruits like oranges and lemons. We brought animals to the land. We planted trees and flowers. Today, we live on the farm and we have a good life. We used plants to make the land green.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about

- a. the writer and his friend
c. the writer and his house

- b. the writer and his farm
d. the writer and his city

2. At first, life was not

a. busy

b. free

c. difficult

d. easy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did they make the farm green?

4. Which is better : life in the past or life today?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. waste - intestine - The large - removes.

2. the - I - spider - think - is - scarier.

3. than - a lotus - A daisy - taller - is - flower.

6 Punctuate the following.

drink plenty of water

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The steppe Eagle

Guiding fact file :

- Where does it live ?
- What does it eat ?

Sample Test 4 on Units 4 & 5

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. In hot countries, the houses are built to keep out the heat.
2. Houses in hot countries have thick walls.
3. In wet countries, the roof is usually a triangle shape.
4. Houses around the world look the same.

T F

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

walk – learn – place – stores

I love my town. It is small, but it has (1) _____, offices, schools and many other places. It is a good (2) _____ to live in. I (3) _____ to school every morning. My school is next to the park. I play in that park with my friends.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. This is the socket
2. The mail bag is very heavy.
3. He works on
4. You can go on safaris

B

- a. It can give some mail carriers a backache.
- b. in the Sahara Desert.
- c. the electrician is fixing.
- d. a tourist boat.
- e. fell into the river.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hello! My name's Karen. I live in Green town. Green town is a nice small town. There are so many things to do there. You can go for a walk in the park. There is a nice park in Bond Street. Opposite the park, there is a post office. There is a hotel next to the post office. The hotel is between the post office and the police station. There is also a playground. The playground is behind the police station. You can buy things at the supermarket. It's next to the playground. The toy shop is opposite the supermarket. There is a big car park here.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** The text is mainly about
 a. Karen's home b. Karen's school
 c. Karen's park d. Karen's town
- 2.** The underlined word "next to" means
 a. in front of b. between c. beside d. opposite

B. Answer the following questions.

- ### 3. Where can you buy things ?

.....

4. What can you do in Green town?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. works - brother - the - at - station - My.

.....

2. you - helps - Who - at - home ?

.....

3. second - the - Take - right!

seconda

6 Punctuate the following.

excuse me, where's the supermarket

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

A job you want to do

Guiding questions :

- What's your favorite job ?
- What do you do in your job ?

Sample Test 5 on Units 4, 5 & 6

نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. I want to be an electrician.
2. My dream job is to be a mechanic.
3. When I was a kid, I fixed hard things.
4. I have my own car now.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

doctor – clean – electricity – plumbers

All the jobs are very important. The builders build the school. The (1) connect the pipes so that we have water. The electricians connect (2) so that we can use lights. The cleaners keep the school (3) A garbage collector takes away all the garbage so you can keep your house clean.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Never touch anything electrical •
2. A guide tells the tourists •
3. The school is a place •
4. Why do you like •

B

- ☐ a. where we learn.
- ☐ b. to be a mail carrier ?
- ☐ c. very helpful.
- ☐ d. a lot of interesting stories.
- ☐ e. with wet hands.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A farmer is a person that works on a farm. A farmer grows crops, like vegetables and fruits. A farmer can also get milk from cows. Some farmers raise animals like chickens or cows. A farmer works hard to make sure his crops and animals are growing. A farmer has to work in the heat, cold, snow and rain. Farmers have to plant, water and harvest their crops. Harvest means to gather the crops when they are grown. Markets and stores get their fruits and vegetables from farmers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is this text about ?

a. Tourism industry

b. Farming industry

c. Fishing industry

d. Mining industry

2. The underlined word "harvest" means

a. raising

b. making

c. feeding

d. cutting

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What animals can farmer raise ?

.....

4. Why does a farmer work hard ?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. the - is - Where - hospital ?

.....

2. buys - from - food - The hotel - farmers.

.....

3. brings - to - The bus driver - children - school - the.

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

what do you do

.....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**Your town****Guiding words :**

- post office
- station

Part

3

15 Sample Tests

خمسة عشر اختبار على
المنهج بالكامل



Sample Test 1



intense
glacial
Africa and
cultural

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False)

T F

1. The fennec fox lives in the forest
2. The fennec fox has small ears
3. The fennec fox is smaller than other foxes
4. The fennec fox can hear insects and small animals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

summer – down – meet – parents

I live on a boat in the summer. It is very big. My (1) _____
work on tourist boats so I go with them. We travel up and
(2) _____ the Nile. I like the (3) _____ very much. I see
many interesting places and I meet people from all over the
world

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Carbon dioxide is a gas in the air
2. People in the desert
3. We go to the hospital
4. The post office is a place

B

- ☐ a. live in tents
- ☐ b. where we send letters
- ☐ c. when we are sick
- ☐ d. that green plants use to make their food
- ☐ e. that people need to breathe

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Renewable energy sources are everywhere. We can make electricity from wind, water, and the sun. We don't need to burn these resources, so there is no pollution.

To make electricity from renewable energy sources, we need new solar farms and wind farms. A solar farm needs a lot of sunshine. A wind farm needs a big space. To make wave energy, you need the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Using renewable energy sources can stop
a. electricity b. pollution c. wind d. sea
- What is the main idea of the text ?
a. Renewable energy sources
b. Non-renewable energy sources
c. Pollution d. Farms

B. Answer the following questions.

- What are the renewable energy sources ?
.....
- Which is cheaper : renewable resources or non-renewable resources ?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- the apartments – The – in front of – trees – are.
.....
- seed - sunflower - soil – in – Plant – the.
.....
- favorite – Which – is – room – your ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

hurghada's on the Red Sea

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Tourism industry

Guiding words :

- tourists
- hotel

Sample Test 2



لصو
السمع
في نها
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Marie works at the shopping mall.
2. Marie checks that the food is fresh.
3. Marie is unkind.
4. Marie works near her house.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

desert – rain – rivers – seed

In the agricultural habitat, farmers grow food for us to eat. Plants near the (1) and lakes need a lot of water. Plants that live in the (2) don't need a lot of water. There is not much (3) in the desert, so we can find an acacia plant and tamarisk there.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Tomatoes are green
2. I love to sit
3. A mechanic
4. A plumber connects

B

- ☐ a. fixes the cars.
- ☐ b. before they are red.
- ☐ c. the pipes and faucets.
- ☐ d. takes you to school.
- ☐ e. in the balcony.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I want to be a teacher. For me, the teacher's job is the best in the world. For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. They need to encourage their students. They need to be very patient. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A teacher can change their students' lives. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- This text is about the job.

a. doctor's	b. teacher's
c. engineer's	d. farmer's
- Teachers need to be very

a. nervous	b. patient	c. unkind	d. ugly
------------	------------	-----------	---------

B. Answer the following questions.

- Why is the job of a teacher the best ?
.....

- Who can change the students' lives ?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- touch – anything – Never – with – electrical – wet hands.
.....

- carriers – delivering – Mail – letters – are.
.....

- work – a hotel – people – in – many – How ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

They re dangerous, aren't they

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Your apartment

Guiding questions :

- Where do you live ?
- Which is your favourite room ?

Sample Test 3



نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. We should save electricity.
2. Turn on the light when you leave a room.
3. Use natural light at night.
4. Unplug the computer if you use it.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

germination – flowers – tomatoes – roots

Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new (1) ! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called (2) We water the plant every day and the (3) grow under the soil. The plant grows flowers and the flowers become tomato fruits.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. This is the socket
2. We take coal, oil and gas
3. Horses like to
4. I take a shower

B

- ☐ a. from the Earth.
- ☐ b. the electrician is fixing.
- ☐ c. taking me to school.
- ☐ d. in the bathroom.
- ☐ e. eat grass.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When Dalia was a baby, she played with blocks. She put one block on top of another. When she was older, she started making things. She made a little house for her dog and a bed for her sister's doll. She always carried a tape measure and a pencil. You can call Dalia when you want to change something in your house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dalia always carried a

- a. doll b. dog c. tape measure d. pen

2. The text talks about

- a. Dalia's sister b. Dalia c. Mona d. Heba

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Do you think Dalia in the future can work as an electrician or an architect ?

.....

4. Why did Dalia use a tape measure ?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. it's – the – Look – at – crocodile, – huge!

.....

2. on – Who – sea – works – the ?

.....

3. her mom – Talia – and – went to – apartment – Suzanne's.

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

a plant produces pollen in a flower

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Our community

Guiding words :

- help
- special skills

Sample Test 4



لصوص
الداستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Zain lives in a city.
2. His house is the biggest in the village.
3. He lives with his family.
4. Zain lives in a village next to the Nile.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

community – weather – salary – hotels

Tourism industry is very important in Egypt. The tourists stay at (1) when they arrive in Egypt. The hotels pay a salary to the workers. The workers use their (2) to buy food, clothes and for transportation. Some of their salary goes to the government to pay for things. When we work, our salary helps our (3) and the whole country.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. A garbage collector
2. A solar farm
3. People need
4. I am a geologist.

B

- ☐ a. I study the ground.
- ☐ b. needs a lot of sunshine.
- ☐ c. oxygen to breathe.
- ☐ d. carbon dioxide to breathe.
- ☐ e. takes away all the garbage.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Camels are amazing ! They're beautiful, strong animals. They help to carry things and people to cross the desert. Their milk is delicious. We can use their fur to make clothes. They can live without water for a long time. Camels have a special ways to close their nose and eyes to stop the sand from coming in. They have large, flat feet to walk on the sand.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The word "....." is the opposite of the word "weak".
a. useless b. helpful c. hungry d. strong
- This text is about
a. crocodiles b. bears c. spiders d. camels

B. Answer the following questions.

- What is special about camels ?
.....
- How can camels walk on the sand ?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- to - animals - They - the - brought - land.
.....

- eat - does - What - fox - the - fennec ?
.....

- tomatoes - grow - new - do - How - we ?
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

which is your favorite room

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

How can we use electricity safely ?

Guiding words :

- touch
- wet hands

Sample Test 5



لنصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. The seed grows roots above the soil.
2. The seed needs sunlight and water to grow.
3. The full plants grow leaves and flowers.
4. We put a seed in the soil.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

city – feel – skills – seeds

In our community, we can all help each other. Many of the people around us have special (1) to help us. Together, we help each other and make our (2) or village a nicer place to live in. It's the right thing to do and it makes you (3) good.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Tomatoes have •
2. The naked mole rat •
3. The fennec fox loses •
4. How long does the steppe eagle live ? •

B

- ☐ a. heat through its ears.
- ☐ b. Around 30 - 40 years.
- ☐ c. seeds inside.
- ☐ d. lives in eastern Africa.
- ☐ e. small mammals and rabbits.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A plant produces pollen in a flower. It uses pollen to make new seeds. The seeds travel away from the plant. The seeds need a new place to grow. Some seeds can move in the wind. These seeds are very light. Some seeds can stick to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them. Other seeds can float on water to find a new place to grow. These seeds are usually big and light.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This text is about

- a. air b. animals c. water d. seeds

2. The light seeds can move in the

- a. soil b. water c. wind d. animal's fur

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does a plant produce pollen ?

4. Why do seeds need a new place ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. thinner – are – Dogs – than – elephants.

2. do – live – Where – you ?

3. the – is – The – rock – cave – in.

6 Punctuate the following.

i think crocodiles are scary

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

papyrus

Guiding words :

- special plant
- paper

Sample Test 6



لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. The plant cells are very, very small.
2. Chloroplasts make the plant blue.
3. A plant is made of thousands of cells.
4. You can see the plant cells with a microscope.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

electricity – books – information – library

I'm Mera. I like books very much. I'm a librarian. I work in a school (1) It's my job to look after all the (2) I buy lots of new books and I help children find the (3) they need. It is an interesting job for me. I like it.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Fishermen •
2. The school is •
3. The salary is the money •
4. There is not much rain •

B

- ☐ a. a place where I learn.
- ☐ b. that is paid to people who work.
- ☐ c. that people need to breathe.
- ☐ d. in the desert.
- ☐ e. catch the fish.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many beautiful animals live in the desert. Rhim gazelle is one of them. Rhim gazelles look very beautiful. They live in the Sahara Desert, and they walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats which protect them from the sun. They have hooves on their feet. These hooves help them walk on the sand. Rhim gazelles live about 14 years.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
 a. beautiful animals b. the Sahara Desert
 c. rhim gazelles d. plants
- The word "....." means to keep them safe.
 a. leave b. protect c. live d. look

B. Answer the following questions.

- How do rhim gazelles walk on the sand in the Sahara Desert ?

- Why are the yellow-white coats helpful to rhim gazelles ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- from – away – smoke – Stay.

- light – natural – in – Use – the day.

- the – clean – The cleaners – school – keep.

why do plants need sunlight and water

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Pros and cons of mail carrier's job

Guiding words :

- get a lot of exercise

- get a backache

Sample Test 7



نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Plants near rivers need a lot of water.
2. There is much rain in the desert habitat.
3. Farmers work in the desert habitat.
4. Farmers grow food for us to eat.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cells – cool – polluted – carbon dioxide

Oxygen is very important for life in Earth. People need oxygen so they can breathe. In big cities, the air is (1) because of factories and cars. There is a lot of (2) in the air. Plants can help us clean the air. The plant (3) need carbon dioxide to make food for the plant.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The supermarket is a place •
2. Snakes and crocodiles •
3. Flapjacks are •
4. I cook food •

B

- ☐ a. in the living room.
- ☐ b. big, square cookies.
- ☐ c. where we buy food.
- ☐ d. in the kitchen.
- ☐ e. are very dangerous.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mrs Judy is a cook. She works in a school kitchen. She cooks lunch for 800 students every week. She makes pies, sandwiches and beefburgers. She cooks meat, fish and vegetables. She washes hundreds of dishes every week! The students like her meals. Today, she is making an apple pie. But she isn't making many!

As today is Saturday, Mrs Judy isn't working, she is at home. She is cooking lunch for two people herself and her son.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word "cook" is a
 a. color b. place c. tool d. job
- Mrs Judy doesn't work on
 a. Sundays b. Mondays c. Saturdays d. Thursdays

B. Answer the following questions.

- For whom is lunch Mrs Judy cooking ?

- What kind of food does Mrs Judy do in the school kitchen ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- good – is – Life – Damietta – in – very !

- green – Why – plants – are – always ?

- strong – Horses – teeth – have.

6 Punctuate the following.

the seed needs sunlight and water, so it can grow

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Living on a boat

Guiding words :

- travel
- interesting places

Sample Test 8



تعليم
الابتدائي
في
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. I live in Brighton.
2. There isn't any beaches in Hurghada.
3. Hurghada is in the east of Egypt on the Red Sea.
4. Hurghada is a big city.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

electrician - plumber - mail carrier - walls

All the jobs are important. There are many workers in our community to help us. A (1) delivers your letters and packages. A builder makes the (2) strong and safe. An (3) connects the electricity, so you can use lights and do your homework on a computer.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Wash the scrape
2. Plants
3. The wind turbines
4. A crocodile

B

- ☐ a. give us oxygen.
- ☐ b. make electricity.
- ☐ c. with gastric juice.
- ☐ d. is huge and scary.
- ☐ e. with water and soap.

4

Hi, I'm Eyad. My grandparents live in a cave. The rooms of their house are in the rock. Inside, it's never too hot or too cold. My aunt moved to a new apartment. She's very happy because she has a big balcony. My friend and his family live on a houseboat. It's small, but he loves living on water. I love living in a house because it's big. I can play outside with my brother and sister.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- 1.** The underlined word "Inside" refers to a /an
 a. apartment b. houseboat
 c. cave d. school
- 2.** The main idea of the text is about
 a. your aunt b. your house
 c. different houses d. different food

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Eyad's aunt move to?

4. Where can we find a place that is not too hot or too cold?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. plants - do - need - Why - and water - sunlight ?

2. weren't - There - mangoes - the tree - on - any.

3. walls - makes - strong - A builder - the.

6 Punctuate the following.

egyptian farmers produce many things

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.**Different jobs****Guiding words :**

- bus driver

- mechanic

Sample Test 9



نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Snakes and crocodiles aren't dangerous.
2. Snakes eat insects, birds and lizards.
3. All animals are important.
4. Crocodiles do a very important job.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

come - sell - factory - look after

I'm a farmer. I grow oranges. All year, I (1) the trees and I give them water and nutrients. Then, I pick the fruit. I send a lot of the fruit to the (2) to make orange juice. I also (3) some of my oranges to the supermarket.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Hurghada is in. •
2. Never touch anything •
3. Tourists go on safaris •
4. The boy is disappointed. •

B

- ☐ a. in the Sahara Desert.
- ☐ b. He didn't pass the test.
- ☐ c. where we learn.
- ☐ d. the east of Egypt.
- ☐ e. electrical with wet hands.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are many jobs we can do. They are all important. They help us to have a better life. A builder makes the walls strong and safe. An electrician connects the electricity, so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer. A plumber connects the pipes and faucets, so you get water to have shower and brush your teeth. A garbage collector takes away all the garbage, so you can keep your house nice and clean.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea in the text is about
a. electricity b. jobs c. water d. children
- A helps you keep your home clean.
a. farmer b. builder
c. plumber d. garbage collector

B. Answer the following questions.

- What can you use electricity for?
.....

- Who made the place that you live in now?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- is – plant – Why – a special – papyrus?
.....

- to – used – They – water – the seeds – rainwater.
.....

- into – tree – a big – will – It – grow.
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

we chew food with our teeth

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Non-renewable resources

Guiding words :

- run out
- oil

Sample Test 10



لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. My grandparents live in a houseboat.
2. The rooms of their house are in the rock.
3. Inside the cave, it's never too hot or too cold.
4. My grandmother is 60 years old.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

breathe - pulls - pumps - oxygen

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We need (1) in our bodies. We (2) in air through our nose. Our diaphragm goes down. It (3) air into our lungs.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. "Breathe" is
2. Rhim gazelles live
3. The pelican
4. A mechanic

B

- ☐ a. in the Sahara Desert.
- ☐ b. eats small fish.
- ☐ c. fixes the cars.
- ☐ d. not much rain.
- ☐ e. to take in oxygen and give out carbon dioxide.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Alex. I live in a city called Brighton. It is in the south of England. It's a small city and about 200,000 people live there. In Brighton, there is a beach and there are lots of cool stores and restaurants. Lots of tourists come to my town to go to the beach. We also have Brighton Pier. There are many games and rides for children there. It is a great fun.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What is the main idea of the text ?
a. England b. Brighton c. London d. Egypt
- The underlined word "cool" in the text means
a. bad b. small c. nice d. near

B. Answer the following questions.

- What can you do in Brighton Pier ?
.....

- How many people live in Brighton ?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- the - Where - post - is - office ?
.....

- you - at - Who - home - helps ?
.....

- driver - the - I - bus - respect.
.....

6 Punctuate the following.

stay away from smoke

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Horses

Guiding fact file :

- Where does it live ?
- What does it eat ?

Sample Test 11



نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. The garbage collector gets wet when it rains.
2. The garbage collector helps to clean the city.
3. The garbage collector is unhealthy.
4. The garbage collector is unhappy to help people.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stick - sink - wind - float

The seeds need a new place to grow. Some seeds can move in the (1) These seeds are very light. Some seeds can (2) to an animal's fur. The animals move and take the seeds with them. Other seeds can (3) on water to find a new place to grow. These seeds are usually big and light.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. During the day, •
2. We chew food with •
3. Farmers work in •
4. The diaphragm is •

B

- ☐ a. our teeth.
- ☐ b. an agricultural habitat.
- ☐ c. a desert habitat.
- ☐ d. a muscle under the lungs.
- ☐ e. it's hot in the desert.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The big day is here. It is Ramy's birthday. Ramy jumps out of bed and gets dressed in a hurry. He eats his breakfast and runs out the door for a special morning doing things with his dad.

"Be back in the afternoon." his mother said.

Ramy is very excited. His father has promised to give him a new bike.

When Ramy gets home, all his friends are there to surprise him. As he walks in the door, they all say, "Happy Birthday!" and there is a wonderful new bike.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
 a. Ramy's birthday b. new bike
 c. school day d. Ramy's book
- Ramy eats and runs out of the door.
 a. dinner b. lunch c. snack d. breakfast

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is Ramy excited ?

.....

4. What was the present ?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. rainwater – used – They – water – to – the seeds.

.....

2. I can – and – relax – do – my homework – quietly.

.....

3. most – job – Which – is – interesting – the ?

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

mariam is british.

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The naked mole rat

Guiding fact file :

- Where does it live ?
- What does it look like ?

Sample Test 12



نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. Amir was a teacher who liked helping people.
2. Amir was always very patient.
3. Amir always explained things.
4. Amir was always angry.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

largest – lungs – stomach – milk

Whales are large mammals. They live in the sea. They have lungs. They use (1) to breathe. The baby whales born alive and feed on their mothers' (2) Some whales eat tiny sea creatures. Others eat large fish. The blue whale is the (3) animal in the world.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
1. He cleaned
 2. Which animals are scary ?
 3. There is polluted air
 4. Chloroplasts

- B**
- ☐ a. Crocodiles are scary.
 - ☐ b. and noise in the city.
 - ☐ c. his bike again.
 - ☐ d. make the plant green.
 - ☐ e. big, square cookies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Eagles are large birds. They eat small animals such as rats and rabbits. Eagles make their nest in high places such as the tops of trees. Their nests are made of sticks and weeds. Eagles can live in the same nest for many years.

The mother eagle lays one or two eggs each year. When she sits on the eggs, the father eagle brings her food. Baby eagles are called eaglets.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about

- a. nests b. foxes c. eagles d. camels

2. Eaglet is a / an eagle.

- a. adult b. female c. male d. baby

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many eggs can the mother eagle lay each year?

.....

4. Can eagles fly high?

.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. redo - Please - band - aid - the.

.....

2. all - other - can - We - help - each.

.....

3. a wind - need - What - farm - does?

.....

6 Punctuate the following.

i work in the tourism industry

7 Write a paragraph of **EIGHTEEN (18)** words using the following guiding elements.

Showing respect to others

Guiding words :

- respect
- listen

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Sample Test 13



نصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. I'm a guide.
2. I catch fish.
3. I sell my fish in the market.
4. I wake up very early every day.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pollution – burn – electricity – population

We all need electricity in our houses. Now we are using more (1) We can make electricity from different energy resources. Non-renewable resources like coal, oil and gas come from the Earth. We cannot make more of them. When we (2) non-renewable resources to make electricity, we also cause (3)

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. The fennec fox loses
2. A wind farm
3. Never put anything into a socket,
4. Spiders

B

- ☐ a. needs a big space.
- ☐ b. only use plugs.
- ☐ c. eat insects.
- ☐ d. heat from its ear.
- ☐ e. have seeds inside.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Amira. I'm an electrician. I studied and practiced for three years before I became an electrician. It is not an easy job but I like it. Electricity is very important in our houses. We use electricity to light our houses. Electricity travels faster than 300,000 kilometers/seconds! In a storm, we sometimes see a flash of lightning. That flash has enough electricity for 1000 families for a year!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
 a. houses b. electricity c. light d. storm
- We use electricity to our houses.
 a. light b. paint c. study d. flash

B. Answer the following questions.

- Is electricity fast or slow?

- What should you do to be an electrician?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- the - tools - These - are - plumber's.

- to - do - do - What - you - want?

- very - That - drives - badly - a taxi - driver.

6 Punctuate the following.

which plant is the tallest

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Hurghada

Guiding fact file :

- Where is it ?
- Interesting places in Hurghada

Sample Test 14



لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

- | | T | F |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The naked mole rat lives in eastern America. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. The naked mole rat has big teeth. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. The naked mole rat can control its body temperature. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. The naked mole rats don't get ill. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

ice – turns – live – pipes

More than half of our body is made up of water. Nothing on Earth can (1) without water. It is brought to our home in (2) and faucets. We use water for drinking, cooking and washing. When we heat water, it turns to steam. When we freeze it, it turns to (3)

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

- A**
- 1. That's water dripping •
 - 2. Lots of tourists •
 - 3. I think the rose is •
 - 4. My father cut down •

- B**
- ☐ a. from the plant.
 - ☐ b. go on safaris in the desert.
 - ☐ c. our tree to get wood.
 - ☐ d. from the faucets.
 - ☐ e. the most beautiful flower.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There are three kinds of animals which are mammals, birds and reptiles. Mammals have fur or hair. Baby mammals drink milk from their mothers' bodies. A whale is a mammal. Mammals don't lay eggs.

Birds are the only animals that have feathers. They lay eggs. They have beaks and wings.

Reptiles have scaly skin. Most reptiles lay eggs on the land. Snakes, crocodiles and lizards are reptiles.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about
 a. food b. drinks c. birds d. animals
- Snakes are
 a. mammals b. birds c. reptiles d. insects

B. Answer the following questions.

- Do whales lay eggs ?

- How many kinds of animals can lay eggs ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

- decided – buy – to – They – land – some.

- don't get – ill – mole rats – want – The naked.

- food – chew – with – We – teeth – our.

6 Punctuate the following.

my mom makes yummy salad

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

A geologist

Guiding words :

- study
- ground

Sample Test 15



لصوص
الاستماع
في نهاية
الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False) :

1. A good teacher is always ready to learn.
2. Teachers don't teach their students.
3. Everyone in the class knows different things.
4. Students teach their teachers.

T	F
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

books – stories – history – tourism

I'm Kareem. I live in Egypt. I am Egyptian. I'm a guide. I work in the (1) industry. Many people come to my country, Egypt every year. There are many interesting places to visit in Egypt. It's my job to explain the (2) and tell the tourists lots of interesting (3)

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

A

1. Stay away
2. A mail carrier
3. I love living
4. Farmers grow

B

- ☐ a. delivers the packages.
- ☐ b. in an apartment.
- ☐ c. from smoke.
- ☐ d. food for us to eat.
- ☐ e. a salary to the students.

Part

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hany woke up on Saturday morning. He was excited and ready to play football in the garden. Then he looked out of the window. He became sad. It was raining. There were dark clouds in the sky. The street was wet and black. It was not a good day for playing football. Hany looked out into the street. He saw his friend Peter wearing his raincoat and playing in a big puddle. Hany liked the idea!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1.** The text is about
- a. a rainy day b. a sunny day
- c. swimming d. Peter
- 2.** The underlined phrase "woke up" means
- a. got up b. made up c. went up d. gave up

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Was Hany happy ? Why ?

4. What happened on Saturday morning ?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. village - in - there - Is - a station - your ?

2. yesterday - homework - She - her - redid.

3. mail - the - bicycle - That - carrier's - is.

6 Punctuate the following.

the bear lifts its paw

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding words.

Crocodiles and snakes

Guiding words :

- dangerous
- eat

[illegible]

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع



1. Listening texts of units

١- نصوص استماع الوحدات

General Exercises on Unit 1

A. My mom made special food for us. It looks delicious. Egyptian farmers produce many kinds of fruits and vegetables that we eat. My mom says we also grow rice in Egypt.

B. We need oxygen in our bodies. In the lungs, the oxygen from the air goes into our blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. The diaphragm goes up. It pushes air with carbon dioxide out of our lungs. We breathe out.

General Exercises on Unit 2

A. Rhim gazelles live in the Sahara Desert. They walk around looking for grass, leaves and plants to eat. They have big ears and long horns. They have yellow-white coats. They have hooves on their feet to help them walk on the sand.

B. A pelican and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry. They are both looking at a big, juicy fish. The bear reaches for the fish. It lifts its paw. The pelican opens its beak. It is ready to take the fish out of the water.

General Exercises on Unit 3

A. Green plants take carbon dioxide from the air. The plant cells need carbon dioxide to make food for the plant. The plants also produce oxygen. Plants in our houses and parks give us oxygen to breathe.

B. Tomatoes have seeds inside. We can take the seeds and grow new tomatoes ! We plant a seed and the plant grows. That is called germination. We water the plant every day and the roots grow under the soil.

General Exercises on Unit 4

A. I live in an apartment. There are three rooms. My favorite room is the living room with the balcony where I can see the whole street. I love to sit in the balcony. My mother doesn't love the balcony.

B. In Hurghada, there's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do. There is the Sahara Desert where lots of tourists go on safaris. We have Sahl Hasheesh in the south of Hurghada. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

General Exercises on Unit 5

A. A builder made the walls strong and safe. An electrician connected the electricity so you can use lights, watch TV, or do your homework on a computer. A plumber connected the pipes and faucets, so you can get water to have a shower and brush your teeth.

B. Being a mail carrier is not an easy job. Mail carriers are outside all the day. This is great when the weather is good, but it's not fun when the weather is very hot or wet and cold. They walk all the day and get a lot of exercise.

General Exercises on Unit 6

A. I'm a librarian. I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help children find the information they need.

B. The hotel pays a salary to the workers. The workers use their salary to buy food, clothes and for transportation. Some of their salary goes to the government to pay for things like roads and schools. When we work, our salary helps our community and the whole country.

2. Listening texts of Accumulative assessments

٢- نصوص استماع التقييمات التراكمية

Sample Test (1) on Unit 1

The land in Damietta governorate is rich in nutrients. The farmers can grow potatoes, lemons, rice, tomatoes and guavas. Fishermen catch thousands of fish in the sea. Domiat cheese is very famous. Life is good in Damietta!

Sample Test (2) on Units 2 & 3

We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important. Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. This controls the number of these small animals.

Sample Test (3) on Units 1, 2 & 3

Judy does a lot of sport at school. On the weekend, Judy walks to her grandma's house with her family. She likes walking because she can talk to her mom and dad. She doesn't eat candy, but she likes fruit.

Sample Test (4) on Units 4 & 5

Houses around the world look different. In hot countries, the houses are built to keep out the heat. They usually have thick walls and small windows. In wet countries, the roof is built for lots of rain. The roof is usually a triangle shape.

Sample Test (5) on Units 4, 5 & 6

My dream job is to be a mechanic. Since I was a kid, I always tried to fix things. My parents gave me easy things to fix. At the age of 15, my dad had an old car and I was excited to fix some parts of the car. But now I have my own car and every Saturday on the morning I check if the engine has a problem in it. I hope in few years, I could have a mechanic career for the rest of my life.

3. Listening Texts of Sample Tests

٣- نصوص استماع الاختبارات

Sample Test 1

The fennec fox lives in the desert. It's smaller than other foxes. Its ears are big. The fennec fox needs big ears to hear insects and small animals.

Sample Test 2

Marie works at the supermarket near her house. My family and I see her every week when we buy food. She checks that the food is fresh. She helps me when I can't find something. She is very kind and helpful.

Sample Test 3

We shouldn't waste a lot of electricity and we should save it. When you leave a room, turn off the lights. If you're not using your computer or television, unplug it. Use natural light in the day.

Sample Test 4

My name is Zain. I live in a village next to the Nile. I live in a house with my family. Our house isn't the biggest in the village. There are tall trees behind my house.

Sample Test 5

We put a seed in the soil. The seed needs sunlight and water so it can grow. The seed grows roots under the soil. Then it grows a shoot and gets taller above the soil. Finally, the full plant grows leaves and flowers.

Sample Test 6

A plant is made of millions of cells. The plant cells are very, very small. Chloroplasts make the plant green. You can only see them with a microscope. The green plant cells make food for the plant. They use sunlight, carbon dioxide and water.

Sample Test 7

Farmers work in agricultural habitat. They grow food for us to eat. Plants near rivers and lakes need a lot of water. There is not much rain in the desert habitat. Plants that live in the desert do not need a lot of water.

Sample Test 8

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt on the

Red Sea. There's a beach and there are lots of interesting things to do in it. It's a big city and about 190,000 people live here.

Sample Test 9

Snakes and crocodiles are very dangerous, but they do a very important job. They eat insects, birds and lizards. We sometimes think some animals are scary or ugly, but they are all important.

Sample Test 10

My grandfather is called Hatem. He is 60 years old. He lives with my grandmother. My grandparents live in a cave. The rooms of their house are in the rock. Inside, it's never too hot or too cold.

Sample Test 11

A garbage collector is outside all day. When it rains, the garbage collector gets wet ! But the garbage collector is happy because he helps to clean the city. He is healthy because he walks every day.

Sample Test 12

Amir was a teacher. He was always very patient and he liked helping people. Sometimes, big brothers can get angry at their little brothers, but Amir was never angry. He played, helped, and explained things all the time.

Sample Test 13

I'm a fisherman. I wake up very early every day. I go out on my boat and catch fish. Then in the afternoon, I come back and sell my fish in the market.

Sample Test 14

The naked mole rat lives in eastern Africa. It has big teeth and no hair. It can't control its body temperature because it has no hair. The naked mole rats are special because they don't get ill and live for a long time.

Sample Test 15

To be a teacher you should be patient and clever. A good teacher is always ready to learn. Teachers teach their students, but students also teach their teachers. Everyone in the class knows different things.